

Council Copy
SArl

Impacts of Harvesting On Regeneration, Productivity, and Floristic Diversity of Quaking Aspen and Northern Hardwood Ecosystems

REPORT TO THE MINNESOTA FOREST RESOURCES COUNCIL



Minnesota
Forest
Resources
Council

2003 Upper Buford Circle
St. Paul, MN 55108
651/603-0108
Fax: 651/603-0110
<http://www.frc.state.mn.us>

MFRC Report # RR-0301

© Copyright 2001, Minnesota Forest Resources Council

This information is available in an alternative format upon request.

Equal opportunity to participate in and benefit from Minnesota Forest Resources Council programs is available to all individuals regardless of race, color, creed, religion, national origin, sex, marital status, status with regard to public assistance, age, sexual orientation, or disability. Discrimination inquiries should be sent to the Minnesota Forest Resources Council, 2003 Upper Buford Circle, St. Paul, MN 55108; or the Equal Opportunity Office, Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 20240.

Printed on recycled paper containing a minimum of 10% post-consumer waste.

Impacts of Harvesting On Regeneration, Productivity, and Floristic Diversity of Quaking Aspen and Northern Hardwood Ecosystems

**Minnesota Forest Resources Council Report
No. RR- 0301
March, 2001**

Alaina L. Berger
Department of Forest Resources

Principal Investigators

Klaus Puettmann, University of Minnesota (current Oregon State University)
George Host, Natural Resource Research Institute
John Zasada, USDA Forest Service, North Central Research Station

Project Staff

Alaina Berger, University of Minnesota
Melissa Arikian, University of Minnesota
Bruce Moreira, University of Minnesota

Study site selection was aided through consultation with foresters from the
USDA Forest Service- Chippewa N.F. Marcell and Deer River Ranger
Districts, Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, University of
Minnesota Cloquet Forestry Center, and Minnesota counties- Aitkin, Pine,
and St. Louis.

For More Information Contact:
2003 Upper Buford Circle
St. Paul, MN 55108
651/603-0108
Fax: 651/603-0110
<http://www.frc.state.mn.us>

Report to the Minnesota Forest Resources Council

Impacts of Harvesting on Regeneration, Productivity, and Floristic Diversity of Quaking Aspen and Northern Hardwood Ecosystems

Alaina L. Berger
Department of Forest Resources

March 2001

Principal Investigators:

Klaus Puettmann, University of Minnesota (current Oregon State University)
George Host, Natural Resource Research Institute
John Zasada, USDA Forest Service, North Central Research Station

Project staff:

Alaina Berger, University of Minnesota
Melissa Arikian, University of Minnesota
Bruce Moreira, University of Minnesota

Funding was provided by the Minnesota Forest Resources Council, USDA Forest Service North Central Research Station, and the University of Minnesota College of Natural Resources.

Study site selection was aided through consultation with foresters from the USDA Forest Service - Chippewa N. F. Marcell and Deer River Ranger Districts, Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, University of Minnesota Cloquet Forestry Center and Minnesota counties-Aitkin, Pine, and St. Louis.

March 29, 2001

Dear Council members,

I am pleased to submit the final report and updates for several components of the research project: *Impacts of Harvesting on Regeneration, Productivity, and Floristic Diversity of Quaking Aspen and Northern Hardwood Ecosystems* to the Minnesota Forest Resources Council. I have compiled 4 subdocuments into one master document that is numbered consecutively for ease of reference. In general this report should cover the final phase which focused on a retrospective evaluation of harvested areas as well as the second, ongoing phase which monitors a harvesting treatment (case study) in order to help link the findings from the "retrospective" to the "actual" harvesting operation.

More specifically sections of the report cover:

- 1) Impact of harvesting on soil compaction and aspen regeneration - Master's thesis of Melissa Arikian on pages *i* - 102, (note summaries and conclusions for chapters 2 and 4 are on pages 37 and 86 respectively),
- 2) Impact of harvesting on soil compaction and floristic composition - manuscript ready to be submitted to the journal *Ecological Applications* spring of 2001 on pages 103-127, (note Management implications on pg.113),
- 3) An update on project status for the Boone Sale - a case study on pages 128-136, and
- 4) Impact of harvesting on sprouting success and growth - a preliminary status report on pages 137-150.

I will be happy to provide additional copies and further information on the various components as planning needs of the council arise.

Sincerely,



Alaina L. Berger
Research Fellow

Department of Forest Resources
University of Minnesota
115 Green Hall, 1530 Cleveland Ave. N.
St. Paul, MN 55108
(612) 624-5317
e-mail: abberger@forestry.umn.edu

Soil disturbance and residual forest canopy influence tree regeneration
in aspen and northern hardwood stands of Minnesota

A THESIS
SUBMITTED TO THE FACULTY OF THE GRADUATE SCHOOL
OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA
BY

Melissa Jean Arikian

IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS
FOR THE DEGREE OF
MASTER OF SCIENCE

March 16, 2001

1914

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

Acknowledgments

Funding for this study was provided by the Minnesota Forest Resources Council, USDA Forest Service North Central Research Station, and the University of Minnesota College of Natural Resources. I would like to thank my committee members D. Grigal and J. Zasada, and especially my advisor K. Puettmann for their integral assistance with my work. I would also like to thank A. Berger for her never ending support with this project, a number of foresters for their assistance in study site selection, and R. Kirk and M. Counte for reviewing earlier drafts of the thesis.

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements.....	i
List of Tables.....	iv
List of Figures.....	v
Thesis Introduction.....	1
Chapter 1:	
Background.....	3
Timber Harvesting Effects on Soil Disturbance.....	4
Soil Disturbance Effects on Plant Growth.....	6
Season of Harvest Effects on Aspen Regeneration.....	7
Residual Overstory Effects on Aspen Regeneration.....	8
Productivity of Aspen Stands.....	9
Introduction to My Study.....	10
Reference List.....	11
Chapter 2:	
Abstract.....	20
Introduction.....	21
Methods.....	23
Study Area and Site Selection.....	23
Field Collection and Description of Data.....	24
Data Analysis.....	28
Results.....	30
Influence of Harvest Timing on Compaction Levels in Aspen Clearcuts...30	
Compaction Levels on Tree Regeneration in Aspen Clearcuts.....30	
Interactive Effects of Residual Basal Area and Soil Compaction on Tree Regeneration.....	31
Aspen Productivity Predictions.....	33
Discussion.....	33
Conclusions.....	37
Reference List.....	49

Chapter 3:

Introduction.....	57
Ecology of Northern Hardwood Tree Species.....	58
Harvesting Impacts on Northern Hardwood Stands.....	61
Quantifying Future Hardwood Stand Composition and Productivity.....	62
Reference List.....	64

Chapter 4:

Abstract.....	73
Introduction.....	74
Harvesting Impacts on Northern Hardwood Stands.....	75
Methods.....	77
Study Area and Site Selection.....	77
Field Collection and Description of Data.....	79
Data Analysis.....	81
Results.....	82
Compaction Levels and Timing of Harvest.....	82
Harvesting Intensity and Understory Tree Composition.....	82
Interactive Effects of Residual Basal Area and Soil Compaction on Understory and Midstory Tree Species Composition.....	83
Discussion.....	84
Conclusions.....	86
Reference List.....	95
Master's Thesis from Bruce Moreira	137

Tables

Chapter 2:

Table 1. Data for control conditions in aspen dominated stands separated by sites within harvest type.....39

Table 2. Study site averages for aspen dominated stands separated by harvest type.....40

Chapter 4:

Table 1. Study site properties for northern hardwood stands investigated in northeastern Minnesota.....88

Table 2. Tree species and their shade tolerances.....89

Table 3. Regression parameters and statistics for describing full and reduced models in the investigation of Hypothesis 3 a.....90

Table 4. Regression parameters and statistics for describing full and reduced models in the investigation of Hypothesis 3 b.....91

Figures

Chapter 2:

Figure 1. Aspen dominated study site locations in Minnesota.....41

Figure 2. Regeneration plot layout within aspen dominated study sites.....42

Figure 3. Relative soil compaction levels in summer vs. winter aspen clearcuts as a function of distance from skid trail(Equations 1 and 2).....43

Figure 4 a. Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative total regeneration density by season of harvest (Equation 3).....44

Figure 4 b. Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative total regeneration density by season of harvest (Equation 4).....45

Figure 4 c. Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative maximum regeneration height by season of harvest (Equation 5).....46

Figure 5 a. Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative regeneration density according to three levels of residual basal area (Equation 6).....47

Figure 5 b. Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative maximum regeneration height according to three levels of residual basal area (Equation 7).....48

Chapter 4:

Figure 1. Northern hardwood study site locations in Minnesota.....92

Figure 2. Field collection methods to investigate tree species composition according to percent cover.....93

Figure 3. Residual basal area versus soil compaction.....94

The first part of the document discusses the importance of maintaining accurate records of all transactions. It emphasizes that every entry should be supported by a valid receipt or invoice. This ensures transparency and allows for easy verification of the data. The second part covers the process of reconciling bank statements with the company's internal records. It highlights the need to identify and resolve any discrepancies as soon as possible to prevent errors from accumulating. The final section provides a summary of the key findings and offers recommendations for improving the overall financial reporting process. It suggests implementing more robust internal controls and regular audits to ensure the highest level of accuracy and compliance.

In conclusion, the document underscores the critical role of diligent financial record-keeping in the success of any business. By adhering to the outlined procedures and best practices, organizations can ensure the integrity of their financial data and maintain a clear audit trail. This not only supports better decision-making but also helps in identifying areas for operational improvement and cost savings.

1 **Thesis Introduction**

2

3

4 This master's thesis is divided into four chapters. All study sites investigated for
5 this thesis were chosen with the same criteria outlined in the methods sections, and pre-
6 investigation all underwent the same treatments (soil disturbance and overstory removal
7 along a gradient of harvest regimes). Although similar in many respects, due to contrasts
8 in their ecology and response to harvesting between aspen dominated and northern
9 hardwood stands, I chose to break this paper into four components: Chapters one and two
10 investigate aspen regeneration, and chapters three and four investigate northern hardwood
11 regeneration.

12

13 Chapter one consists of a literature review that summarizes information from a
14 wide variety of publications concerned with aspen regeneration after timber harvest, and
15 the influences and interactions of soil compaction and residual overstory basal area. This
16 review introduces and summarizes results from previously conducted research, while
17 chapter two elaborates on the study I conducted. Chapter two is written in journal
18 submission format for Forest Science and reports the findings concerning aspen
19 regeneration along a gradient of harvest regimes. In this chapter I present specific
20 information about differential aspen density and height response gradients and
21 interactions of soil compaction and residual basal area.

22

23 Chapter three consists of a literature review summarizing literature concerned
24 with northern hardwood regeneration after harvest, the influences of soil compaction and
25 residual overstory basal area on vegetation, and how responses vary depending on shade
26 tolerance of tree species. This review introduces and summarizes information from
27 previous data, while chapter four elaborates on research from the project presented in
28 chapter two. Chapter four parallels the findings in chapter two regarding the effects of
29 harvest activity on soil compaction. In addition it expands upon the influence and
30 interactions of that soil compaction with residual overstory basal area on northern
31 hardwood regeneration and advance regeneration according to tree species' shade
tolerances. Results from this study help to better understand the ecology and current
management considerations of aspen and northern hardwoods in northern Minnesota.

31

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Chapter 1

**Soil compaction and residual forest canopy influences on tree regeneration
in aspen dominated stands: A literature review**

1 **Background**

2
3 Natural disturbance regimes interrupt the natural progression of stand
4 development and may cycle the forest to early successional stages. Northern forest
5 ecosystems undergo perpetual cycles of perturbation. Historically, the Great Lakes
6 forests, specifically of Minnesota, contained vast expanses of white pine (*Pinus strobus*
7 L.), red pine (*P. resinosa* Aiton.), jack pine (*P. banksiana* Lambert.), and northern
8 hardwood species including aspen (*Populus spp.*) (Curtis 1959, Ahlgren and Ahlgren
9 1983). Before the 20th century the timber industry began to change ecosystem dynamics
10 at a drastic rate, most notably with its removal of white and red pines. Many forests in
11 the Great Lakes region now covered with aspen (*Populus tremuloides* Michx.) were first
12 harvested starting around 1830 by burning and logging of mature pine and northern
13 hardwood stands (Gates 1930, Kilburn 1957, Curtis 1959), and have been periodically
14 harvested since then. Prior to significant logging disturbance, aspen stands comprised a
15 smaller component of the Great Lakes forest (Ahlgren and Ahlgren 1983). Due to its
16 regeneration strategies, aspen was able to rapidly invade recently burned, blowdown, or
17 logged areas. Trembling aspen has the widest natural distribution of any tree in North
18 America (Perala 1990). The aspen forest dominated by trembling (*P. tremuloides*
19 Michx.) and bigtooth aspen (*P. grandidentata* Michx.) comprises over one-third of
20 Minnesota's timberland, representing 5.1 million acres in 1990 (Miles et al. 1995).

21
22 Management objectives regarding the harvest and utilization of aspen have
23 changed over the past 100 years. Aspen was treated as an aggressive, weedy species that
24 prevented other, more desirable tree species from regenerating on a site. Developments
25 in wood technology and utilization created a new demand for aspen as a valuable
26 commodity. Currently, forest managers consider aspen to be an economically profitable
27 species, and have formulated management plans to perpetuate this valuable resource
28 (Raile and Hahn 1982). As a result of its availability and high demand, harvesting of
29 aspen has increased in the Lake States. Many early reports of aspen ecology focused on
30 maintaining adequate environmental conditions to maximize regeneration efforts (Weigle
31 and Frothingham 1911, Zon 1928, Zehngraff 1949, Stoeckeler and Macon 1956, Graham

1 et al. 1963). Although aspen species take advantage of and regenerate in recently
2 disturbed areas, a wide variety of factors influence the eventual success or failure of an
3 aspen stand. These factors include but are not limited to stand, soil, and harvesting
4 conditions. This paper focuses on several important variables affecting aspen
5 regeneration, including soil disturbance, season of harvest, and amount of residual
6 overstory.

7

8 **Timber Harvesting Effects on Soil Disturbance**

9

10 Harvesting traffic often decreases soil aeration, creates rutting, and damages
11 roots, therefore decreasing the growth potential of roots and aspen's ability to sucker.
12 Rutting occurs when wheels from harvesting equipment break through the soil surface or
13 root mat, creating soil displacement and frequently results in physical injury to extant
14 root systems. Soil compaction often accompanies rutting, both which have significant
15 impacts on the soil's environment. Minnesota's Generic Environmental Impact
16 Statement (GEIS) of 1992 identified soil compaction as a major issue forest managers
17 must focus on in order to maintain forest productivity in Minnesota (Jaakko Pöyry
18 Consulting 1994).

19

20 Traffic by logging machinery in a harvested site creates a gradient of disturbance,
21 which can be quantified in part by measuring soil compaction. Pritchett and Fisher
22 (1987) define soil compaction as the reduction in macropore volume with an increase in
23 the volume proportion of solids, caused by some external force. The degree of
24 compaction depends on the type(s) of equipment used and the harvesting intensity
25 applied. The magnitude of soil compaction also depends on soil properties including soil
26 water content, soil particle size distribution, organic matter content, and soil strength
27 (Chancellor 1977, Marshall and Holmes 1979, Grey and Jacobs 1987). Soil strength
28 measures soil particles' resistance to movement and relates the amount of compaction
29 and rutting accrued from harvest machinery traffic.

30

1 Many soil properties affect the magnitude of soil compaction resulting from a
2 harvest operation. Soil moisture content is directly related to the magnitude of soil
3 compaction, as wet soils compact more readily than drier soils (Steinbrenner and Gessel
4 1955, Hatchell et al. 1970, Moehring and Rawls 1970, Wert and Thomas 1981). Soil
5 particle size distribution, or soil texture, also affects the degree of compaction. Although
6 soil texture classes are highly variable, clays are likely to compact to higher bulk
7 densities (Moolman 1981, Grey and Jacobs 1987). Conversely, compaction in soils
8 largely composed of coarse-textured, poorly sorted sands, or non-swelling clays is not
9 influenced strongly by moisture content (Bodman and Constantin 1965, Grey and Jacobs
10 1987).

11
12 Bulk density of a soil is a measure of soil compaction. Bulk density reflects the
13 dry weight per volume of soil in Mg/m^3 . Soil bulk density and porosity most directly
14 measure soil compaction in a quantitative manner, and studies frequently use them to
15 express changes due to vehicular traffic (Reisinger et al. 1988). Bulk density increases
16 with the applied force from harvesting machinery, negatively correlates to soil porosity,
17 and in forest soils ranges from 0.2 Mg/m^3 (soils with a high organic matter content) to 1.9
18 Mg/m^3 (coarse sandy soils). Intermediate ranges for clay dominated soils average around
19 1.3 Mg/m^3 . Resistance to penetration also measures soil compaction in terms of soil
20 strength. Soil compaction due to logging traffic may reduce the soil pore space,
21 significantly affecting seedling root penetration, thus negatively influencing suckering
22 and seedling growth (Hatchell et al. 1970, Martin 1988). Soil cone penetrometers
23 measure the resistance of a soil to penetration, which many researchers correlate to the
24 forces a plant root must push through in the soil medium.

25
26 Soil compaction appears most severe on landings, truck roads, and skid trails
27 where machinery traffic is concentrated (Kochenderfer 1977, Case and Donnelly 1979,
28 Martin 1988). Studies found skid trails to have significantly lower aeration porosity and
29 greater bulk density values than of undisturbed portions of the same harvested site
30 (Kabzems 1996). The severity of site damage increases in a non-linear fashion with the
31 number of times heavy machinery drives over an area (Murphy 1982). Most of the

1 resulting soil compaction/increase in bulk density occurs during the first passes of
2 harvesting equipment (Hatchell et al. 1970, Shetron et al. 1988, Koger et al. 1984,
3 Reisinger et al. 1988, Williamson and Neilsen 2000). Froehlich et al. (1980) showed that
4 60 percent of the soil compaction on skid trails occurred after only six trips. Skid trail
5 systems are often designed with the intention of minimizing the aerial extent of site
6 disturbance. Moist soils of medium-texture sustain considerable compaction after only
7 the first vehicle trip, so confining harvest machinery to fewer trails minimizes site
8 disturbance. Dry soils of coarse texture are less susceptible to extreme compaction after
9 several trips, so skid trail layout on such soils could cover a greater area than on wet clay
10 soils (Hatchell et al. 1970).

11

12 **Soil Disturbance Effects on Plant Growth**

13

14 As soil disturbance occurs, plants experience reduced or halted growth rates due
15 to insufficient soil aeration conditions. The effect of soil disturbance on root penetration
16 in trafficked areas, i.e. skid trails, can have negative impacts on subsequent tree growth
17 (Bates et al. 1990, Navratil 1991, Zasada and Tappeiner 1969, Schier et al. 1985, Corns
18 1988, Shepperd 1993). This reduction in growth, however, varies with tree species, pre-
19 harvest soil conditions, stand density, and severity of disturbance from harvest machinery
20 (Murphy 1982). Few studies have found no detrimental effects of harvesting equipment
21 on soil conditions (King and Haines 1979), and only few have found actual growth
22 increases along skid trails (Pfister 1969, Stransky 1981). Lack of reduction or increased
23 growth rates on disturbed areas most likely relate to soil amelioration of skid road areas.
24 Most studies report specific quantification of reduced growth resulting from soil
25 disturbance (Bates et al. 1990, Navratil 1991, Schier et al. 1985, Shepperd 1993, Zasada
26 and Tappeiner 1969). Froehlich (1976) found Douglas fir trees exhibiting growth losses
27 of 14% height growth in moderately impacted areas, and of 30% in heavily impacted
28 areas (11-40 % and >40% respectively of their root zone affected by a 10% or greater
29 increase in soil density, respectively). Loblolly pine height growth was reduced by 39
30 percent in compacted skid road areas as compared to adjacent untrafficked areas
31 (Lockaby and Vidrine 1984). Alban et al. (1994) found aspen sucker density reduced in

1 compacted areas with average maximum sucker height at 218 cm compared to 282 cm in
2 untreated areas.

3
4 Because aspen regenerates through root suckering, regeneration responses reflect
5 its vulnerability to site and soil disturbance. Aspen root sprouts and suckers originate
6 from a shallow root network from the parent stand, and therefore remain vulnerable to
7 site and soil disturbance. In addition to soil compaction, physical injury to root systems
8 comprise the major impact of soil disturbance on aspen's ability to sucker. Root damage
9 can occur with no apparent soil disturbance, significantly decreasing aspen's suckering
10 capacity through fine root injury and death (Shepperd 1993). Rutting and root damage
11 have been shown to significantly reduce sucker density (Shepperd 1993) and height
12 growth (Smidt 1996).

13 14 **Season of Harvest Effects on Aspen Regeneration**

15
16 Another consideration influencing regeneration is the season of year at which
17 aspen stands are harvested. Since stored root carbohydrates supply energy for sucker
18 development (Tew 1970), seasonal differences in root carbohydrate content significantly
19 affect sucker vigor (Bates et al. 1990, Ek and Brodie 1975). Root carbohydrate content is
20 highest in early fall, remains at high levels throughout the dormant season, and is lowest
21 in spring due to leaf flush (Schier and Zasada 1973, Tew 1970). Many studies in the
22 Great Lake States conclude aspen suckering occurs at a higher density and with greater
23 height growth when harvest operations take place in the winter months (Weigle and
24 Frothingham 1911, Zehngraff 1946, Stoeckeler 1947, Zehngraff 1947, Stoeckeler and
25 Macon 1956). Aspen stands cut in winter months were found to contain from two to five
26 times the density of aspen suckers as compared to similar stands cut in the summer of that
27 same year (Zehngraff 1946). However, studies conducted in Saskatchewan have found
28 summer harvests to stimulate aspen regeneration, where suckering densities following
29 winter clearcutting were nearly half the quantity as compared to summer clearcutting
30 (Bella 1986, Bella and DeFranceschi 1972). These findings most likely relate to soil
31 warming that occurred in Saskatchewan's extreme northern climate. A recent survey

1 indicates that 54% of harvesting operations in Minnesota occurred during winter months
2 (Puettmann and Ek 1999).

3
4 Another factor responsible for seasonal differences in aspen suckering is the soil
5 conditions. If the soil is frozen, winter logging also results in less site disturbance
6 because soil compaction is minimized (Mace et al. 1971). Also, aspen suckers
7 regenerating after winter harvests are established the following summer, allowing an
8 equal or advanced start with competitive brush vegetation (Zehngraff 1947). Spring and
9 summer harvests may result in aspen suckers being produced in midsummer. These
10 sprouts may die in the following winter due to intense competition from previously
11 established vegetation, improper hardening off (Zehngraff 1946), or damage during
12 harvest.

13

14 **Residual Overstory Effects on Aspen Regeneration**

15

16 Aspen is a very shade intolerant species and achieves maximum stocking and
17 growth under open conditions (Schier 1976, Schier et al. 1985, Bates et al. 1989, Perala
18 1990, Peterson and Peterson 1996). Aspen is a clonal species that requires soil
19 temperatures of at least 20° C (Steneker 1974) to stimulate maximum suckering and
20 development. Traditionally, forest managers have clearcut aspen stands, taking
21 advantage of the manner in which it reproduces rapidly from root suckers following
22 logging or fire (Weigle and Frothingham 1911, Stoeckeler and Macon 1956, Farmer
23 1962, Schier and Smith 1979, Steneker 1974, Bella 1986). However, recent trends in
24 forest management include leaving reserve trees in clear-cut areas (Puettmann and Ek
25 1999). Studies have shown that residual overstory left after an aspen harvest produces
26 high levels of shade that can reduce soil temperatures and significantly reduce aspen
27 suckering ability (Zon 1928, Zehngraff 1947, Stoeckeler and Macon 1956, Schier and
28 Smith 1979, Hove and Blinn 1990, Ffolliott and Gottfried 1991).

29

30 Current guidelines recommend a conservative level of 2.3 m²/ha of residual basal
31 area when managing aspen stands for optimal regeneration (Perala 1977, DeByle and

1 Winokur 1985, Navratil 1991). After four growing seasons Stoeckeler and Macon (1956)
2 found stands with a residual overstory of 4.4 m²/ha basal area to contain only 150 trees/ha
3 of aspen sprouts, compared to roughly 1,100 trees/ha growing in stands with 0.6 m²/ha
4 residual basal area. Percent canopy cover also estimates the degree by which a residual
5 canopy shades regenerating aspen stands. To represent degree of shading on aspen
6 regeneration, Huffmann et al. (1999) found increasing residual canopy cover to
7 significantly reduce aspen regeneration. Stoeckeler and Macon (1956) found average
8 annual height growth of aspen sprouts in the lower residual overstory (0.6 m²/ha) stand
9 averaged to be over three times greater than sprouts growing in the denser overstory (4.4
10 m²/ha) stand. Interspecific overstory competition also shades aspen suckers and
11 significantly influences aspen regeneration.

12

13 White spruce and aspen residual basal area proved to significantly reduce aspen
14 suckering density (Waldron 1963, Navratil 1991). Areas with residual basal areas of 25+
15 m²/ha contained 20% stocking of aspen suckers, compared to over 70% stocking in areas
16 of 5 m²/ha or less residual overstory. Quaking aspen diameter growth also decreased
17 over 50% from increased competitive conditions of overtopping by other aspen
18 regeneration (Puettmann and Reich 1995). Measured as percent open sky (POS),
19 increased competitive conditions were defined as decreasing POS from 100 to 20%. This
20 type of competitive pressure also significantly decreased aspen height growth and crown
21 volume growth. As a shade intolerant species, aspen also suffers reduced regeneration
22 success from competition with shrub species (Zehngraft 1947). Dense areas of shrubby
23 brush, especially *Corylus cornuta* L. (beaked hazel) resulted in a decrease of about 75
24 percent in aspen sprouts as compared with shrub free areas (Stoeckeler and Macon 1956).

25

26 **Productivity of Aspen Stands**

27

28 Sustaining aspen productivity following a harvest regime largely depends on the
29 quality and density of regeneration (Navratil 1996). Many studies have attempted to
30 model aspen productivity over time based on current growing conditions. Average
31 volumes for 50-year-old aspen stands range from 200 to 400 m³/ha (Peterson and

1 Peterson 1992). Foresters commonly use site index to measure site quality. Defined as
2 the average height of dominant and codominant trees in an even-aged stand at a given age
3 (often 50 years), site index is well correlated with a given stand's productive potential
4 (Carmean et al. 1989). Average 50-year site index values for aspen stands in Minnesota
5 range between 50 and 90 (English units), or 15 to 27 (metric equivalents) (Laidly 1979,
6 Carmean et al. 1989). Current research suggests that using site index ignores the need to
7 account for population density influences on height growth (MacFarlane et al. 2000). It
8 is a well-established fact that aspen growth conforms to self-thinning density laws. Early
9 development of sucker-origin aspen stands has been well documented to show rapid
10 sucker growth and rapid natural thinning (e. g. Pollard 1971, Bella and DeFranceschi
11 1980, Peterson and Peterson 1992). The rate at which this self-thinning density law is
12 applied to individual stands depends in part on local growing conditions, often associated
13 with a site's potential for production, measured by site index (Perala et al. 1995).
14 Therefore there has been an increased need to incorporate additional ecological factors
15 and existing site conditions which will affect the future stand's productivity (Peterson and
16 Peterson 1992).

17

18 **Introduction to My Study**

19

20 The abundance of aspen ecology literature lends itself to understanding concepts
21 in optimizing regeneration as a management goal. Many variables influence the success
22 or failure of an aspen management, including the amount of residual overstory remaining,
23 the timing and severity of a harvesting regime, and the resulting soil disturbance. This
24 first chapter focused on quantifiable differences in aspen regeneration resulting from the
25 individual factors listed above. However, current studies have yet to consider the
26 interacting effects of these variables. Chapter two provides solid evidence of the
27 significant impacts these interactions have on aspen regeneration, and the implications
28 they hold for the future composition and productivity of Minnesota's forests.

29

Chapter One Reference List

- 1
2
- 3 Ahlgren, C.E., and I.F. Ahlgren. 1983. The human impact on Northern forest
4 ecosystems. P. 33-51 *in* The Great Lakes Forest: An environmental and social
5 history. Flader, S.L. (ed.). University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, MN.
- 6 Alban, D.H., Host, G.E., Elioff, J.D., and D.A. Shadis. 1994. Soil and vegetation
7 response to soil compaction and forest floor removal after aspen harvesting.
8 USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-315. 8 p.
- 9 Bates, P.C., Blinn, C.R., and A.A. Alm. 1990. A survey of the harvesting histories of
10 some poorly regenerated aspen stands in northern Minnesota. P. 221-230 *in*
11 Proceedings of 1989 Aspen Symposium. Adams, R.D. (ed.). USDA For. Serv.
12 Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-140.
- 13 Bates, P.C., Blinn, C.R., Alm, A.A., and D.A. Perala. 1989. Aspen stand development
14 following harvest in the Lake States region. *North. J. Appl. For.* 6(4):178-183.
- 15 Bella, I.E. 1986. Logging practices and subsequent development of aspen stands in east-
16 central Saskatchewan. *For. Chron.* 62(2):81-83.
- 17 Bella, I.E., and J.P. DeFranceschi. 1972. The effect of logging practices on the
18 development of new Aspen stands, Hudson Bay, Saskatchewan. Information
19 Report NOR-X-33. Northern Forest Research Centre, Canada. 20 p.
- 20 Bella, I.E., and J.P. DeFranceschi. 1980. Biomass productivity of young aspen stands in
21 western Canada. *Environ. Can., Can. For. Sev., North. For. Res. Cent. Inf. Rep.*
22 NOR-X-219.
- 23 Bodman, G.B., and G.K. Constantin. 1965. Influence of particle size distribution in soil
24 compaction. *Hilgardia* 36:567-591.
- 25 Carmean, W.H., Hahn, J.T., and R.D. Jacobs. 1989. Site index curves for forest tree
26 species in the Eastern United States. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-128.

- 1 Case, A.B., and J.G. Donnelly. 1979. Type and extent of ground disturbance following
2 skidder logging in Newfoundland and Labrador. Information Report N-X-176.
3 Newfoundland Forest Research Centre, Canada. 25 p.
- 4 Chancellor, W.J. 1977. Compaction of soil by agricultural equipment. Dept. Agric. Sci.
5 Univ. of Calif. Bull 1881.
- 6 Coms, I.G.W. 1988. Compaction by forestry equipment and effects on coniferous
7 seedling growth on four soils in the Alberta foothills. *Can. J. For. Res.* 18:75-84.
- 8 Curtis, J.T. 1959. The vegetation of Wisconsin: An ordination of plant communities.
9 University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, WI. 388 p.
- 10 DeByle, N.V., and R.P. Winokur (eds.). 1985. Aspen: ecology and management in the
11 western United States. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-119. 283 p.
- 12 Doucet, R. 1989. Regeneration silviculture of aspen. *For. Chron.* 65:23-27.
- 13 Ek, A.R., and J.D. Brodie. 1975. A preliminary analysis of short-rotation aspen
14 management. *Can. J. For. Res.* 5:245-258.
- 15 Farmer, R.E. 1962. Aspen root sucker formation and apical dominance. *For. Sci.* 8:403-
16 410.
- 17 Ffolliott, P.F., and G.J. Gottfried. 1991. Mixed conifer and aspen regeneration in small
18 clearcuts within a partially harvested Arizona mixed conifer forest. USDA For.
19 Serv. Res. Pap. RM-294. 9 p.
- 20 Froehlich, H.A. 1979. Soil compaction from logging equipment: Effects on growth of
21 young ponderosa pine. *J. Soil and Water Conservation* 34:276-278.
- 22 Froehlich, H.A., Azevedo, J., Cafferata, P., and D. Lysne. 1980. Predicting soil
23 compaction on forested land. Forest Engineering Department, Oregon State
24 University, Corvallis, OR. 120 p.
- 25 Gates, F.C. 1930. Aspen association in northern lower Michigan. *Bot. Gaz.* 90:233-259.

- 1 Graham, S.A., Harrison, R.P.Jr., and C.E. Westell Jr. 1963. Aspens: phoenix trees of the
2 Great Lakes region. University of Michigan Press, Ann Arbor, MI. 272 p.
- 3 Grey, D.C., and E.O. Jacobs. 1987. The impact of harvesting on forest site quality. S.
4 Afr. For. J. 140:60-66.
- 5 Hatchell, G.E., Ralston, C.W., and R.R. Foil. 1970. Soil disturbances in logging. J. For.
6 68(12):772-775.
- 7 Hove, G.P., Blinn, C.R., and R.D. Adams. 1990. Aspen stand development in Beltrami
8 County, Minnesota. P. 113-121 in Proceedings of 1989 Aspen Symposium.
9 Adams, R.D. (ed.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-140.
- 10 Huffman, R.D., Fajvan, M.A., and P.B. Wood. 1999. Effects of residual overstory on
11 aspen development in Minnesota. Can. J. For. Res. 29:284-289.
- 12 Jaakko Pöyry Consulting. 1994. Final generic environmental impact statement study on
13 timber harvesting and forest management in Minnesota. Jaakko Pöyry Consulting,
14 Inc., Tarrytown, NY. 500 p.
- 15 Jones, J.R. 1976. Aspen harvesting and reproduction. P. 30 -34 in Utilization and
16 marketing as tools for aspen management in the Rocky Mountains. Fort Collins,
17 CO. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-29.
- 18 Kabzems, R. 1996. Where have all the big pores gone? Impacts of concentrated heavy
19 equipment traffic on aeration porosity and bulk density in an aspen ecosystem. P.
20 209-210 in Ecology and Management of British Columbia Hardwoods FRDA II,
21 FRDA Report 255. Canada-British Columbia Partnership Agreement on Forest
22 Resources Development, Canada.
- 23 Kilburn, P.D. 1957. Historical development and structure of the aspen, jack-pine and
24 oak vegetation types on sandy soils in northern lower Michigan. Ph.D.
25 dissertation, Univ. of Michigan, Ann Arbor. 267 p.
- 26 King, A.L., and S. Haines. 1979. Soil compaction absent in plantation thinning. USDA

- 1 For. Serv. Res. Note SO-251. 4 p.
- 2 Kochenderfer, J.N. 1977. Area in skidroads, truck roads, and landings in the central
3 Appalachians. *J. For.* 75:507-508.
- 4 Koger, J.L., Burt, E.C., and A.C. Trowse Jr. 1984. Skidder tire size vs. soil compaction
5 in soil bins. *Trans. ASAE* 27:665-669.
- 6 Laidly, P.R. 1979. Metric site index curves for aspen, birch, and conifer in the Lake
7 States. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-54.
- 8 Lockaby, B.G., and C.G. Vidrine. 1984. Effect of logging equipment traffic on soil
9 density and growth and survival of young loblolly pine. *South. J. Appl. For.* 109-
10 112.
- 11 MacFarlane, D.W., Green, E.J., and H.E. Burkhart. 2000. Population density influences
12 assessment and application of site index. *Can. J. For. Res.* 30:1472-1475.
- 13 Mace, A.C.Jr., Williams, T., and J.C. Tappeiner. 1971. Effect of winter harvesting
14 methods on soil bulk density and infiltration rates. Res. Note 228. Minn. Dept.
15 For., St. Paul, MN.
- 16 Marshall, T.J., and J.W. Holmes. 1979. *Soil Physics*. Cambridge University Press,
17 Cambridge. 349 p.
- 18 Martin, C.W. 1988. Soil disturbance by logging in New England - review and
19 management recommendations. *North. J. Appl. For.* 5(1):30-34.
- 20 Miles, P.D., Chen, C.M., and E.C. Leatherberry. 1995. *Minnesota Forest Statistics,*
21 1990, revised. USDA For. Serv. Res. Bull. NC-158. 138 p.
- 22 Moolman, J.H. 1981. Soil textural properties influencing compactibility.
23 *Agrochemophysica* 13(2):13-19.
- 24 Murphy, G. 1982. Soil damage associated with production thinning. *New Zealand J.*
25 *Forestry Sci.* 12(2):281-292.

- 1 Navratil, S. 1991. Regeneration challenges. P. 15-27 *in* Aspen Management in the 21st
2 Century. Proceedings of a symposium. Navratil S., and P.B. Capman, (eds.).
3 Forestry Canada Northwest Region, Northern Forestry Centre, and Poplar Council
4 of Canada, Edmonton, Alberta.
- 5 Navratil, S. 1996. Sustained aspen productivity on hardwood and mixedwood sites. P.
6 53-64 *in* Ecology and Management of B. C. Hardwoods: workshop proceedings.
7 P.G. Comeau et al., (eds.). Canadian Forest Service, Pacific Forestry Centre: B.C.
8 Ministry of Forests, Research Branch, Victoria, B.C
- 9 Perala, D.A. 1977. Manager's handbook for aspen in the North-Central States. USDA
10 For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-36. 30 p.
- 11 Perala, D.A. 1990. *Populus tremuloides* Michx. Quaking Aspen. P. 555-569 *in* Silvics
12 of North America, Volume 2, Hardwoods. Burns, R.M., and B.H. Honkala (eds.).
13 USDA For. Serv. Agric. Handb. No. 654, US Gov. Print. Off., Washington, DC.
- 14 Perala, D.A., Leary, R.A., and C.J. Cieszewski. 1995. Stockability, growth, and yield of
15 the circumboreal aspens (*Populus tremuloides* Michx., *P. tremula* L.). USDA
16 For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-321. 24 p.
- 17 Peterson, E.B., and N.M. Peterson. 1992. Ecology, management, and use of aspen and
18 balsam poplar in the prairie provinces, Canada. For. Can. Northwest Reg., North.
19 For. Cent. Spec. Rep. 1. 252 p.
- 20 Peterson, E.B., and N.M. Peterson. 1996. Ecology and silviculture of trembling aspen.
21 P. 31-51 *in* Ecology and Management of British Columbia Hardwoods FRDA II,
22 FRDA Report 255. Canada-British Columbia Partnership Agreement on Forest
23 Resources Development, Canada.
- 24 Pfister, R.D. 1969. Effect of roads on growth of western white pine plantations in
25 northern Idaho. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. INT-65. 8 p.
- 26 Pollard, D.F.W. 1971. Mortality and annual changes in distribution of above-ground
27 biomass in an aspen sucker stand. Can. J. For. Res. 1:262-266.

- 1 Pritchett, W.L., and R.F. Fisher. 1987. Properties and management of forest soils. 2nd
2 ed. John Wiley & Sons, New York.
- 3 Puettmann, K.J. and A. Ek. 1999. Status and trends of silvicultural practices in
4 Minnesota. *North. J. Appl. For.* 16(3):160-166.
- 5 Puettmann, K.J., and P.B. Reich. 1995. The differential sensitivity of red pine and
6 quaking aspen to competition. *Can. J. For. Res.* 25:1731-1737.
- 7 Raile, G.K., and J.T. Hahn. 1982. The extent and characteristics of low productivity
8 aspen areas in Minnesota. *USDA For. Serv. Res. Bull. NC-61.* 36 p.
- 9 Reisinger, T.W., Simmons, G.L. and P.E. Pope. 1988. The impact of timber harvesting
10 on soil properties and seedling growth in the south. *South. J. Appl. For.* 12(1):58-
11 67.
- 12 Schier, G.A. 1976. Physiological and environmental factors controlling vegetative
13 regeneration of aspen. P. 20-23 *in* Utilization and marketing as tools for aspen
14 management in the Rocky Mountains: Proceedings of the symposium. *USDA*
15 *For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-29.*
- 16 Schier, G.A., Shepperd W.D., and J.R Jones. 1985. Regeneration. P. 197-208 *in* Aspen:
17 Ecology and Management in the Western United States, DeByle, N.V., and
18 Winokur, R.P. (eds.). *USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-119.*
- 19 Schier, G.A., and A.D. Smith. 1979. Sucker regeneration in a Utah aspen clone after
20 clear-cutting, partial cutting, scarification, and girdling. *USDA For. Serv. Res.*
21 *Note INT-253.* 6 p.
- 22 Schier, G.A., and J.C. Zasada. 1973. Role of carbohydrate reserves in the development of
23 root suckers in *Populus tremuloides*. *Can. J. For. Res.* 3:243-250.
- 24 Shepperd, W.D. 1993. The effect of harvesting activities on soil compaction, root
25 damage, and suckering in Colorado aspen. *West. J. Appl. For.* 8(2):62-66.

- 1 Shetron, S.G., Sturos, J.A., Padley, E. and C. Trettin. 1988. Forest soil compaction:
2 effect of multiple passes and loadings on wheel track surface soil bulk density.
3 North. J. Appl. For. 5(2):120-123.
- 4 Smidt, M.F. 1996. Production, soil disturbance, and regeneration of wide-tire skidder
5 harvests of quaking aspen stands in east-central Minnesota. Ph.D. dissertation,
6 University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota. 120 p.
- 7 Stenecker, G.A. 1974. Factors affecting suckering of trembling aspen. For. Chron. 50:32-
8 34.
- 9 Stoeckeler, J.H., and J.W. Macon. 1956. Regeneration of aspen cutover areas in northern
10 Wisconsin. J. For. 54:13-16.
- 11 Stransky, J.J. 1981. Site preparation effects on soil bulk density and pine seedling
12 growth. South. J. Appl. For. 5(4):176-180.
- 13 Tew, R.K. 1970. Root carbohydrate reserves in vegetative reproduction of aspen. For.
14 Sci. 16:318-320.
- 15 Waldron, R.M. 1963. Observations on aspen suckering in Manitoba and Saskatchewan.
16 Can. Dep. For., For. Res. Br. Internal Rep. 63-MS-22.
- 17 Weigle, W.G. and E.H. Frothingham. 1911. The aspens: their growth and management.
18 U. S. Dept. Agric. For. Serv. Bul. 93. 35 p.
- 19 Williamson, J.R., and W.A. Neilsen. 2000. The influence of forest site on rate and
20 extent of soil compaction and profile disturbance of skid trails during ground-
21 based harvesting. Can. J. For. Res. 30:1196-1205.
- 22 Zasada, Z.A., and J.C. Tappeiner. 1969. Soil disturbance from rubber-tire skidders
23 during summer harvesting of aspen. Minn. For. Res. Notes 204.
- 24 Zehngraff, P.J. 1946. Season of cutting affects aspen sprouting. Lake States Forest
25 Experiment Station, St. Paul, MN. Tech. Note No. 250.

1 Zehngraff, P.J. 1947. Response of young aspen suckers to overhead shade. USDA For.
2 Serv. Tech. Note No. 278.

3 Zehngraff, P.J. 1949. Aspen as a forest crop in the Lake States. J. For. 47:555-565.

4 Zon, R. 1928. Timber growing and logging practice in the Lake States. U. S. Dept.
5 Agric. Dept. Bull. 1496.

6

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12

Chapter 2

**Soil compaction and residual forest canopy influence
tree regeneration in aspen dominated stands**

1 **Abstract**

2
3 Impacts of clearcutting and partial harvest on aspen stands were examined at 25
4 sites in northern Minnesota. In each stand, residual overstory, soil compaction, and tree
5 regeneration were determined along a disturbance gradient in the summers of 1997 and
6 1998, 4 to 11 years after harvest. I characterized soil disturbance as soil compaction
7 using an Eijkelkamp soil cone penetrometer. Compaction levels on skid trails were
8 higher on sites harvested in the summer than sites harvested in winter. After adjusting for
9 differences in soil compaction, stands harvested in winter were associated with higher
10 relative regeneration stem densities and height growth than on sites harvested in the
11 summer. Relative tree regeneration stem densities and height growth decreased with
12 increasing soil compaction and increasing residual basal area. Predictions of future stand
13 volume at age 50 revealed moderate decreases in productivity resulting from harvest
14 conditions investigated in this study.

15

16 **Additional Key Words:**

17

18 tree regeneration, aspen regeneration, *Populus tremuloides*, soil compaction,
19 residual overstory, harvesting effects, aspen productivity

20

1 Introduction

2

3 Historically, the Great Lakes forests, specifically of Minnesota, contained vast
4 expanses of white pine (*Pinus strobus* L.), red pine (*P. resinosa* Aiton.), jack pine (*P.*
5 *banksiana* Lambert.), and northern hardwood species including aspen (*Populus spp.*)
6 (Curtis 1959, Ahlgren and Ahlgren 1983). Due to its regeneration strategies, aspen
7 (*Populus tremuloides* Michx.) rapidly invaded stands previously dominated by pine that
8 were burned, blown down, logged, or abandoned after agricultural clearing. The aspen
9 forest dominated by trembling (*P. tremuloides* Michx.) and bigtooth aspen (*P.*
10 *grandidentata* Michx.) now comprises over one-third of Minnesota's timberland,
11 representing 5.1 million acres in 1990 (Miles et al. 1995). Although aspen species take
12 advantage of and regenerate in recently disturbed areas, a wide variety of factors
13 influence the success or failure of aspen regeneration. These factors include, but are not
14 limited to site, soil, and post harvesting conditions.

15

16 Management objectives regarding the harvest and utilization of aspen have
17 changed over the past 100 years; aspen was treated as an aggressive, weedy species that
18 prevented other, more desirable tree species from regenerating on a site. But as a result
19 of its large capacities for natural regeneration and increased importance in the wood
20 products industry, harvesting of aspen has increased in the Lake States. Aspen is a very
21 shade intolerant species and achieves maximum stocking and growth under open
22 conditions (Schier 1976, Schier et al. 1985, Bates et al. 1989, Peralá 1990, Peterson and
23 Peterson 1996). Traditionally, forest managers have clearcut aspen stands, taking
24 advantage of the manner in which it reproduces rapidly from root suckers following
25 logging or fire (Weigle and Frothingham 1911, Stoeckeler and Macon 1956, Farmer
26 1962, Schier and Smith 1979, Steneker 1974, Bella 1986). However, recent trends in
27 forest management include leaving reserve trees in clear-cut areas (Puettmann and Ek
28 1999). Studies have shown that residual overstory left after an aspen harvest can produce
29 too much shade and significantly reduce aspen regeneration (Zon 1928, Zehngraff 1947,
30 Stoeckeler and Macon 1956, Schier and Smith 1979, Hove and Blinn 1990, Ffolliott and
31 Gottfried 1991). Current aspen management guidelines recommend a maximum of 2.3

1 m²/ha of residual overstory basal area when managing aspen stands for optimal
2 regeneration (Perala 1977, DeByle and Winokur 1985, Navratil 1991).

3
4 Many studies in the Great Lake States also concluded that aspen suckering occurs
5 at lower densities and with lower height growth when harvest operations take place
6 during summer months (Weigle and Frothingham 1911, Zehngraft 1946, Stoeckeler
7 1947, Zehngraft 1947, Stoeckeler and Macon 1956, Smidt 1996). Aspen root
8 carbohydrate stores are lowest in the spring and early summer, providing a lesser amount
9 of potential sprouting vigor following summer clearcuts as compared to winter clearcuts
10 (Schier 1981, Schier and Zasada 1973). In addition, if the soil is frozen in winter,
11 logging results in less site disturbance because soil compaction is minimized (Mace et al.
12 1971) and less physical disturbance to the organic layers.

13
14 Because aspen regenerates through root suckering, regeneration success can be
15 closely related to soil disturbance. Harvesting traffic often decreases soil aeration and/or
16 damages roots (e.g. Hatchell et al. 1970, Shetron et al. 1988), therefore decreasing the
17 growth potential of roots and the ability of aspen to sucker (e.g. Youngberg 1959,
18 Hatchell et al. 1970, Stone and Elioff 1998). Logging machinery traffic creates a
19 network of skid roads in harvested sites, and disturbances can be quantified in part by
20 measuring soil compaction. Soil compaction appears most severe in landings, truck
21 roads, and skid trails where machinery traffic is most concentrated (Kochenderfer 1977,
22 Case and Donnelly 1979, Martin 1988, Williamson and Neilsen 2000). The degree of
23 compaction depends on the type(s) of equipment used, machine operator attitude and
24 skill, and harvesting intensity. Soil compaction may reduce the soil pore space;
25 increasing soil strength (Grey and Jacobs 1987), inhibiting tree root penetration, thus
26 negatively influencing growth (Hatchell et al. 1970, Martin 1988).

27
28 Tree regeneration responses to harvesting effects can be quantified by measuring
29 the productivity of resulting vegetation. Most studies that have investigated impacts of
30 soil compaction on tree regeneration have not considered residual overstory effects (e. g.
31 Froehlich 1979, Bates et al. 1990, Navratil 1991, Schier et al. 1985, and Shepperd 1993).

1 Other studies looking at residual overstory effects on aspen regeneration have not
2 incorporated effects of soil compaction (e. g. Huffmann et al. 1999, Stoeckeler and
3 Macon 1956, Perala 1977, and DeByle and Winokur 1985). These previously mentioned
4 studies investigated young aspen stands and have not extended current growth values to
5 rotation age yield predictions. Investigations of modeling site productivity over time on
6 regenerating aspen stands have not incorporated the potentially negative influences of
7 soil compaction or residual basal area on future stand volume (e. g. Ek and Brodie 1975,
8 Raile and Hahn 1982).

9
10 This study set out to investigate the interaction of the various factors influencing
11 aspen regeneration following harvest. The first set of hypotheses tested that soil
12 compaction levels on skid trails are greater than areas away from skid trails (Hypothesis
13 1a), and that summer harvests have higher associated soil compaction than winter
14 harvests (Hypothesis 1b). The second set of hypotheses tested that soil compaction
15 significantly decreases tree regeneration density and maximum height of suckers
16 (Hypothesis 2a), and that this relationship significantly differs between sites harvested in
17 winter versus summer (Hypothesis 2b). The third set of hypothesis incorporates the
18 effects of residual overstory into the relationships established in hypotheses 1a and 2a,
19 and states that there is a significant interaction between increased soil compaction and
20 residual overstory basal that decreases aspen regeneration density and maximum height
21 (Hypothesis 3).

22 23 **Methods**

24 25 ***Study Area and Site Selection***

26
27 This study included 25 aspen dominated stands in six counties of northeastern
28 Minnesota (Figure 1). Trembling aspen (*Populus tremuloides* Michx.) and bigtooth
29 aspen (*Populus grandidentata* Michx.) comprise the major species indicated by the aspen
30 designation. These stands were clearcut or partially harvested between 1988 and 1994
31 and measured in the summers of 1997 and 1998, four to eleven (average of six) growing

1 seasons after harvest. Sites were selected to assure a range of harvest treatment
2 conditions, and fairly homogeneous within site characteristics. The study sites covered
3 four harvest regimes; including summer and winter aspen clearcuts, aspen clearcuts with
4 low hardwood residual basal area ($<3 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$), and aspen cuts with heavy hardwood
5 residual basal area ($12 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$) (Table 1). Study sites were only selected if no recent
6 major disturbances or management activity had occurred since the harvest. Sites
7 investigated in this study had an average quaking aspen site index of 22 m (Table 1).

8
9 Study sites were fairly level and had an average slope of 8 percent. The overall
10 mean annual temperature for the study region ranges from 3.8 to 5.6° C, and the overall
11 mean annual precipitation ranges from 66 to 76 cm (Anderson et al. 1996). The study
12 sites exist mainly on till parent materials (Anderson et al. 1996). Soil textural data
13 collected from all field sites indicated that all study sites are located on similar classes of
14 sandy loams and silt loams

15
16 All sites were considered aspen harvests, i.e. aspen was the main species cut, with
17 the major residual overstory species being northern hardwoods. Other than aspen, sugar
18 and red maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh. and *Acer rubrum* L.), basswood (*Tilia americana*
19 L.), northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.), and paper birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh.)
20 were the most common of the 22 tree species in the residual stand, and composed 82 % of
21 the residual overstory basal area. Trembling and bigtooth aspen were the most common
22 species regenerating, comprising 97 % of the regenerating stems on all aspen sites. Paper
23 birch and red maple were the most common of the 11 non-aspen tree species
24 regenerating, and together composed 2 % of the total regeneration density.

25 26 ***Field Collection and Description of Data***

27
28 I obtained timber sale maps from the United States Forest Service, Minnesota
29 Department of Natural Resources and several counties in northern Minnesota, from
30 which I chose target locations for subsequent field observations. On each study site,
31 twenty regeneration plots were systematically placed along gradients of disturbance

1 (Figure 2). Four transects extended from landings or skid trails, into the adjacent areas.
2 Rectangular (2 m x 5 m) plots were established along these transects. The initial plot was
3 placed on a skid trail or opening with subsequent plots established parallel to and at
4 increasing distances from the plot 1. Five plots were established per transect, 0, 2, 2, and
5 4 meters apart, (i.e., for analysis purposes, the centers of each regeneration plot were
6 respectively 0, 1, 5, 9, and 15 meters from the edge of the skid trail). This approach was
7 followed as closely as possible given specific site conditions. Season of harvest was
8 labeled as winter or summer, but I could not determine whether soil was frozen during
9 the harvest operation. Implications of these methods are described in this chapter's
10 discussion section.

11

12 *Forest Vegetation*

13

14 On each regeneration plot, diameters (mm) at breast height (DBH) were measured
15 for all trees > 2.54 cm DBH with a caliper or diameter tape. The origin of all trees within
16 the regeneration plot was noted as sucker, sprout, seed, or residual overstory. Heights
17 (m) were taken for six regeneration stems per species in each regeneration plot using a
18 height pole or clinometer. For each species, trees were grouped into diameter classes and
19 heights were taken for the maximum, intermediate, and minimum DBH per species.
20 Maximum tree height represented the trees that most likely will make up the future
21 composition of the regenerating stand. Residuals were defined as trees left standing after
22 harvest with a minimum DBH of 18 cm. Residual overstory basal area was measured
23 from the center of each regeneration plot using a 1-meter factor prism.

24

25 For all aspen clearcut study sites investigated during the 1998 field season (11 out
26 of 13 total), additional tree measurements were taken in smaller subplots. These
27 additional data were intended to better characterize smaller size classes of regeneration
28 trees in aspen clearcuts. Within each regeneration plot, these subsets of data were
29 collected in two 1 m x 1 m subplots randomly placed in two of the four plot corners.
30 Within each 1 square meter subplot, DBH (mm) and heights (m) were taken for all trees
31 greater than 1 meter in height regardless of DBH using a caliper or diameter tape.

1 While aspen was the dominant species regenerating on all sites (representing 86
2 % or greater of stem density) and was the tree species with maximum height on 99 % of
3 the plots, all tree species were included in the analysis. Excluding stems other than aspen
4 would possibly misrepresent the response of tree regeneration to soil compaction and
5 overstory residual basal area.

6
7 *Forest Soil*

8
9 As an indicator of soil compaction, the penetration resistance (kPa) of the soil
10 matrix using an Eijkelkamp soil cone penetrometer (Bennie and Burger 1988) was
11 measured in each regeneration plot up to a 15 cm soil depth (ASAE 1990). Force exerted
12 on the penetrometer equaled a uniform rate of approximately 30 mm/sec or slower, and
13 readings were taken when the cone reached 15 cm soil depth. A 1 cm² base area cone
14 was used on all but 3 study sites. Penetrometer measurements for the three study sites on
15 which a 2 cm² base area cone was used were then converted by the following equation:

$$\text{Cone resistance} = \frac{\text{gauge reading}}{\text{base area of cone (cm}^2\text{)}}$$

16
17 A minimum of ten randomly selected penetrometer samples per plot was taken
18 and recorded. All measurements on a given study site were taken within the same day, to
19 ensure that soil moisture conditions were relatively uniform for an entire site. Readings
20 were ignored when it was obvious that the penetrometer hit a rock or a log and those
21 readings were not recorded. Since the mean and median penetrometer values for each
22 regeneration plot were correlated by an r^2 value of 0.99, I used the median value to
23 minimize effects of outlying values.

24
25 Ten samples for soil texture analysis were collected from five randomly located
26 points within each study site. For each point, one sample was taken from the 0-25 cm
27 profile, and one sample was taken from the 26-50 cm profile. Texture analysis was
28 conducted in the lab in fall 1998/winter 1999 using a modified hydrometer method
29 (Grigal 1973). Four study sites were chosen on which to investigate the relationships

1 between soil bulk density, soil water content, and resistance to penetration. Soil sample
2 volume was obtained using the irregular-hole method (Howard and Singer 1981). Each
3 sample was then placed in a paper bag and dried for 48 hours in an oven at 105°. Wet
4 and dry weights were taken with a Mettler PM 34 Delta Range electronic digital balance
5 scale. Soil bulk density and soil moisture data were obtained from these weight
6 differences.

7
8 To quantify effects of harvest regimes on tree regeneration, I considered several
9 factors contributing to between-site variability including stand age, site index, study site
10 location, and soil properties. My analysis did not set out to compare the sites directly,
11 instead I assumed within site homogeneity and compared within site trends. I
12 standardized the data for each transect with 100% as the baseline. The plot farthest away
13 from the skid trail (plot 5) was considered a "control" in terms of harvesting impact on
14 soils. Therefore soil compaction, density, and height measurements in all other plots
15 were divided by the respective values found in plot 5, thus calculations "relative density,"
16 "relative total density," "relative maximum height," and "relative compaction" or
17 "predicted relative compaction." The methodology applied to this standardization
18 technique assumed that plots farthest from the skid trail (plot 5) always represented the
19 control condition and thus contained the highest density, highest maximum height, and
20 lowest soil compaction when adjusting for overstory density. Apparently, this was not
21 always the case, thus leading to an inflated model intercept and slope. These inflated
22 intercepts may have partially resulted from improper selection of a control condition,
23 harvest treatment, and/or random chance. Residual overstory basal areas reflected
24 absolute values.

25 26 *Aspen Productivity*

27
28 To obtain estimates of future aspen productivity on aspen clearcuts, the average
29 50 year quaking aspen site index value for sites in Table 1 (22 m) was used. For aspen
30 sites with residual basal area, examples were used with 6 m²/ha of residual basal area,
31 and a site index of 22 m. For the prediction we assumed that the impact of soil

1 compaction and residual overstory is constant over time. I.e., the relative height
2 difference (expressed as %) between areas on skid trails or landings versus adjacent areas
3 at time of measurement will be the same as height differences at rotation age of 50 years.
4 These differences were interpreted as differences in 50-year site index and volume
5 predictions were derived from normal yield tables for quaking aspen (Perala 1977).

7 *Data Analysis*

8
9 I conducted all statistical analyses using JMP 3.1.6.2 (SAS Institute Inc. 1996).
10 Unless otherwise noted, relationships were considered significant if $p \leq 0.05$. Simple and
11 multiple regression analyses were used to determine the nature of relationships between
12 soil properties, overstory conditions, harvesting conditions, plot location, and tree
13 regeneration.

14
15 To avoid potential interacting effects of residual overstory, only aspen clearcuts
16 were used to analyze soil compaction trends and the effect of predicted compaction on
17 tree regeneration density and height. Aspen clearcut analyses included the smaller
18 subplots to estimate aspen regeneration density (designated as "total regeneration") and
19 height response to soil compaction.

20
21 To quantify the levels of soil compaction on and off the skid trail (Hypothesis 1a)
22 I fit linear models predicting relative compaction levels as a function of distance from
23 skid trail. For analysis purposes, I added a standard value of 0.1 to distances from skid
24 trail and conducted a natural log transformation to reflect the nonlinear relationship.
25 Analysis of covariance was used to determine whether this relationship varied between
26 sites that were harvested in winter versus summer (Hypothesis 1b). The full model
27 contained indicator variables for season of harvest on the intercept and slope parameters;
28 while reduced models only included indicator variables on either the slope, the intercept,
29 or neither.

30

1 To test whether regeneration density and height were influenced by soil
2 compaction levels (Hypothesis 2a), I fit linear regression models predicting relative total
3 density and relative maximum height as a function of predicted relative compaction (as
4 determined in Hypotheses 1a and 1b). I used analysis of covariance to determine whether
5 this relationship differed between sites harvested in winter versus summer (Hypothesis
6 2b) as described for Hypotheses 1a and 1b. One transect that was already "flagged" in
7 the field due to its unique location on a side slope, was determined to be an outlier and
8 omitted from the analyses. For relative maximum height analysis, plots were omitted
9 from analysis if there were no trees present. Therefore, total density regeneration
10 analyses contained 80 observations of summer aspen clearcuts and 135 observations of
11 winter aspen clearcuts. Maximum regeneration height analyses contained 104
12 observations of summer aspen clearcuts and 92 observations of winter aspen clearcuts.
13

14 I investigated the effects of residual overstory and soil compaction and their
15 interactions on tree regeneration (Hypothesis 3) using two approaches. First, I fit linear
16 regression models predicting relative density and relative maximum height as a function
17 of predicted relative compaction, residual basal area, and predicted relative compaction
18 times residual basal area and testing the parameters for significance ($p > 0.10$). I used
19 analysis of covariance to determine whether these relationships differed between sites
20 harvested in summer versus winter as described for Hypotheses 1a and 1b. Three
21 transects; i.e. 15 plots were omitted from relative density analysis because there were no
22 trees in plot 5. Therefore the relative density analysis contained 483 observations. Plots
23 were omitted from relative height analysis if there were no trees present. Therefore the
24 relative maximum height analysis contained 322 observations.
25

26 For the second approach investigating effects of residual overstory and soil
27 compaction on tree regeneration, I fit regression models predicting absolute regeneration
28 density and absolute maximum height as a function of predicted relative soil compaction
29 for each site. Then, the intercept and slope coefficients of each site were regressed
30 against the respective residual basal area. A significant slope of both the intercept and

1 slope models is an indicator that the effects of soil compaction and residual basal area on
2 regeneration are interactive.

4 **Results**

6 *Influence of Timing on Compaction Levels in Aspen Clearcuts*

8 On aspen clearcut sites, median penetrometer values varied across sites (Table 2),
9 individual readings ranged from 300 to 8,500 kPa, and plots farthest from the skid trail
10 represented a range of compaction from 300 to 7,700 kPa (Table 1). Penetrometer
11 readings on plots in the skid trail ranged from 750 to 8,500 kPa. Relative soil compaction
12 decreased significantly with distance (DIST) from the skid trail (Figure 3). Harvesting
13 impacts on relative soil compaction differed between seasons of harvest. Sites harvested
14 in the summer months showed significantly steeper soil compaction gradients (equation
15 1) than areas harvested in winter (equation 2). I used these results to obtain predicted
16 relative soil compaction (PRED COMP) equations to use for subsequent aspen clearcut
17 analyses:

$$19 \quad (\text{summer}) \quad [1] \text{ PRED COMP} = 162.75 \text{ kPa} - 21.41 \text{ kPa} [\ln (\text{DIST (m)} + 0.1)]$$

$$20 \quad (\text{winter}) \quad [2] \text{ PRED COMP} = 116.33 \text{ kPa} - 5.76 \text{ kPa} [\ln (\text{DIST (m)} + 0.1)]$$

22 *Compaction Levels and Tree Regeneration in Aspen Clearcuts*

24 The regeneration density varied within harvesting treatments (Table 1), ranging
25 from 0 to 76,000 t/ha and plots farthest from the skid trail represented a range from 0 to
26 15,000 t/ha (Table 1). Regeneration density in the skid trail ranged from 0 to 5,000 t/ha.
27 Maximum regeneration heights ranged from 3.3 to 9.3 m. Plots farthest from the skid
28 trail represented a range of maximum tree height values from 4.1 to 9.3 m (Table 1), and
29 maximum tree heights in the skid trails ranged from 3.7 to 8.7 m.

1 In summer and winter harvested aspen clearcuts, regeneration density and height
2 were negatively associated with soil compaction. On aspen clearcuts, sites harvested
3 during winter had higher relative total regeneration densities as compared to sites
4 harvested in summer. The magnitude of this effect varied with predicted relative soil
5 compaction as indicated by two robust models, equation 3:

$$6$$

$$7 \quad [3] \text{ Relative total density} = 247 - 1.4(\text{PRED COMP}) - 0.1(\text{PRED}$$

$$8 \quad \text{COMP*SEASON)}$$

9

10 where for SEASON, winter = 0 and summer = 1; and equation 4:

$$11$$

$$12 \quad [4] \text{ Relative total density} = 238 - 1.4 (\text{PRED COMP}) - 16.1(\text{SEASON})$$

13

14 Note, that on winter harvested sites the density at 100% compaction, i.e., control
15 conditions, is greater than 100%, indicating that plot 5 did not always have the lowest
16 density in a transect. This resulted in an inflated intercept and slope for winter harvested
17 sites (note, the slope is already steeper than the slope for summer harvested sites) and
18 may be partially responsible for having two robust models.

19

20 The slope, but not the intercept, of relative maximum height was significantly
21 different, i.e., steeper ($p=0.10$) for sites harvested in summer versus winter (Equation 5,
22 Figure 4c), indicating that height differences are mainly due to higher sensitivity to
23 compaction after summer harvests:

$$24$$

$$25 \quad [5] \text{ Relative maximum height} = 139 - 0.35(\text{PRED COMP}) - 0.03(\text{PRED}$$

$$26 \quad \text{COMP*SEASON)}$$

27

28 ***Interactive Effects of Residual Basal Area and Soil Compaction on Tree Regeneration***

29

30 Residual basal areas varied across sites (Table 1), ranging from 0 to 31 m²/ha. In
31 general, residual basal area negatively impacted regeneration density and growth. The

1 relative magnitude of this effect did not differ between summer and winter harvested
2 sites, but varied with predicted relative soil compaction as indicated by equation 3:

3
4 [6] Relative density = $379 - 2.3(\text{PRED COMP}) - 17.5(\text{BA}) + 0.1(\text{PRED}$
5 $\text{COMP*BA})$

6
7 The BA, PRED COMP, and PRED COMP*BA parameters were significant at
8 $p < 0.01$ with an adjusted model R-square of 0.21. Figure 5a provides a visual example
9 using this model to predict density at three levels of residual overstory basal area. Again,
10 note that the fact that plot 5 in winter aspen clearcuts did not always have the lowest
11 density inflated the intercept and slope of this model.

12
13 To predict maximum regeneration height, a full model containing PRED COMP,
14 BA, and PRED COMP*BA as independent variables was not significant. Investigating
15 these variables individually or in combination as independent variables indicated that the
16 relationships did not differ between summer and winter harvested sites. The model with
17 the highest fit and only significant parameters was:

18
19 [7] Relative maximum height = $140 - 0.4(\text{PRED COMP}) - 0.005(\text{PRED}$
20 $\text{COMP*BA})$.

21
22 A visual example of this model is presented in Figure 5b.

23
24 The alternate method of analyzing effect of residual basal area and soil
25 compaction on regeneration density and height supported the findings described above.
26 The intercept and slope coefficients of regeneration density on predicted soil compaction
27 decreased as residual basal area increased ($p < 0.01$). Similarly, the intercept and slope
28 coefficients of maximum regeneration height on predicted soil compaction decreased as
29 residual basal area increased ($p < 0.01$).

30
31

1 ***Aspen Productivity Predictions***

2

3 For aspen sites clearcuts in winter, areas in skid trails and landings were predicted
4 to produce 83 m³/ha of volume at age 50 compared to 141 m³/ha in adjacent areas. This
5 related to a 41% difference in productivity at age 50. For aspen sites with residual basal
6 area of 6 m²/ha, areas in skid trails and landings were predicted to produce 83 m³/ha of
7 volume compared to 188 m³/ha in adjacent areas. This related to a 55% difference in
8 productivity at age 50.

9

10 **Discussion**

11

12 Many studies in the Great Lake States conclude aspen suckering occurs at a
13 higher density and with greater height growth when harvest operations take place in the
14 winter months (Weigle and Frothingham 1911, Zehngraff 1946, 1947, Stoeckeler 1947,
15 Stoeckeler and Macon 1956). These authors suggest that likely the higher below ground
16 carbon storage in winter may be responsible for this. Root carbohydrate content is
17 highest in early fall, remains at high levels throughout the dormant season, and is lowest
18 in spring due to leaf flush (Schier and Zasada 1973, Tew 1970). While I could not test
19 this phenomena directly due to confounding factors like age differences between the
20 suckers. I did determine a higher sensitivity of suckers to compaction as evident by the
21 higher density and height reductions on high compaction areas of summer versus winter
22 harvested sites. Significantly fewer seedlings of northern hardwood species have been
23 documented on compacted areas such as skid trails, compared to less compacted areas
24 (Nyland et al. 1977, Moehring and Rawls 1970, Ruark et al. 1982). Furthermore, sites
25 harvested during the winter months have less potential for soil disturbance since the
26 frozen soil is less conducive to damage by harvesting equipment (Mace et al. 1971).
27 Zehngraff (1946) and Bates et al. (1993) cited similar trends of decreased aspen sucker
28 density and height on summer versus winter harvested sites.

29

30 My results imply that, in terms of maximizing aspen regeneration, there is a three-
31 fold benefit to harvesting operations in the winter months. Soils are likely frozen,

1 resulting in lower soil compaction, roots have higher carbon storage, and maybe due a
2 combination of these factors, sprouts are less sensitive to compaction. A recent survey
3 indicates that 54% of all harvesting operations in Minnesota occurred during winter
4 months (Puettmann and Ek 1999), but no information about the proportion of aspen
5 winter harvests exists.

6
7 The difficulties in interpreting regeneration density responses are due to the issue
8 that on some transects in the winter harvested sites, the "control" conditions, i.e., plot 5,
9 had lower densities than plots 3 and 4. This may be partially due to measurement errors,
10 e.g., plot 5 may have been closer to another unrecognized skid trail than 15m. Another,
11 more likely alternative is that this result may be a random effect and the sample size was
12 not large enough. Other standardization techniques, e.g., combining the two plots
13 farthest from the skid trail did not produce satisfactory results either. Thus, the analysis
14 of regeneration density has to be viewed cautiously. With "proper" standardization
15 results, i.e., the predicted relative total density at 100% compaction should be 100%.
16 Thus, the differences between the slopes of the lines for relative total density on summer
17 and winter harvested sites would be enlarged. Thus, even with an inflated intercept and
18 slope the conclusion regarding the higher sensitivity of summer harvests to compaction is
19 valid.

20
21 This raises an important question: what are the impacts of soil compaction and
22 residual overstory at rotation age? The answer to this question involves aspects of
23 competition induced mortality, since young aspen stands experience rapid self-thinning.
24 It may be quite likely that the lower density of summer harvested stands leads to lower
25 competition levels that eventually improve individual tree growth (Graham et al. 1963).
26 However, since my study sites are still in the regeneration or early stem exclusion phase
27 (Oliver and Larson 1996), it may be too early to tell whether seasonal differences in
28 regeneration trends will persist throughout the life of these aspen stands. Likewise, many
29 studies cited above indicating seasonal differences in aspen regeneration have only
30 focused on first and second-year trends. Ek and Brodie (1975) produced a suckering
31 model for the Lake States that considers ingrowth, and found winter harvests to produce

1 17 percent more suckers than summer harvests after two entire growing seasons, but
2 differences between densities decreased over time.

3 My study set out to answer one question that is discussed frequently among
4 foresters: does soil compaction on and away from skid trails persist or will it be mitigated
5 over time? Even eleven years after harvest I still saw significant differences in soil
6 compaction between skid trails and adjacent areas assumed to have less logging traffic.
7 Holman et al. (1978) found that bulk density levels in areas apart from skid trail returned
8 to precut levels within one year, but within the three years of their study, skid trails in
9 summer cuts had not yet returned to their precut bulk density levels. Stone and Elioff
10 (1998) found significantly greater bulk density and soil strength in compacted areas
11 versus non-compacted areas five years after treatment. Other studies support the notion
12 that soil compaction recovery on skid trails can be a slow process, often taking over 40
13 years for soil compaction levels on skid trails to resemble precut conditions (e.g. Vora
14 1988). Consequently, my results indicate that logging traffic should be minimized and
15 concentrated on as few skid roads as possible since the initial machinery passes create the
16 majority of the disturbance (Hatchell et al. 1970, Shetron et al. 1988, Murphy 1982,
17 Shepperd 1993, Williamson and Neilsen 2000). Harvesting machinery can also cause
18 root damage with no apparent soil disturbance, significantly decreasing aspen's
19 regeneration capacity through fine root and suckering root injury and death (Shepperd
20 1993). Rutting and root damages have been shown to contribute to reduce sucker density
21 (Shepperd 1993) and height growth (Smidt 1996).

22
23 Aspen regeneration was affected by the interaction between the amount of
24 residual overstory on a site and the corresponding levels of soil compaction, making
25 avoidance of soil disturbance even more critical in areas with heavy overstory residuals.
26 Again, the actual equations predicting density must be viewed with caution, as the
27 intercept of the relative total density model is inflated due to the standardization issue
28 described above. However, the alternative analysis methods supported the basic
29 conclusions that soil compaction and residual overstory interactively reduce sucker
30 densities. The practice to leave more residuals after a harvesting operation negatively
31 impacts future aspen growth and productivity due to the competition from overstory

1 trees, and my results are similar to other studies (e.g., Schier and Smith 1979, Stoeckler
2 and Macon 1956, Hove and Blinn 1990, Ffolliott and Gottfried 1991, and Huffmann et al.
3 1999). Zehngraff (1947) reported lower aspen regeneration density levels 11 years after
4 clearcut (16,877 trees per hectare) than my results showed after an average of 6 growing
5 seasons (16,000 to 30,000 trees per hectare).

6
7 More importantly, do these remaining levels of soil compaction on skid trails and
8 negative influences of residual basal area predict future reductions in stand productivity?
9 My results agree with other studies that found compacted areas such as skid trails to
10 contain lower aspen regeneration densities as compared to adjacent uncompacted areas.
11 In some cases even, these regeneration differences persisted throughout the life of a stand
12 (e.g. Bates et al. 1990, Schier et al. 1985, Shepperd 1993, and Stone et al. 1998). Studies
13 looking at future productivity of recently harvested aspen stands agree that to sustain
14 aspen productivity following a harvest, the density and quality of regeneration plays an
15 important role (Navratil 1996). However, unless the sites are not fully captured by aspen,
16 early differences in densities seem to diminish over time (Ek and Brodie 1975). Fully
17 stocked aspen clearcuts to regenerate at high densities, often culminating their
18 productivity between the ages of 50 and 65 years, with optimal total volumes ranging
19 from 200 to 400 m³/ha (Peterson and Peterson 1992). None of these studies looked at the
20 potentially detrimental effects of soil compaction and residual basal area (e. g. Raile and
21 Hahn 1982, Ek and Brodie 1975).

22
23 These productivity decline estimates need to be put in perspective by the actual
24 area they relate to within an aspen harvest, that are compacted as part of the harvesting
25 operation. While the negative impact of soil compaction on regeneration is enhanced in
26 areas with high residual cover, the area impacted by soil compaction is less under partial
27 harvest compared to clearcutting operations. For example, Stokes et al. (1997) found that
28 13.7 %, 13.2 %, 12.5 %, 9.6 %, and 8.2 % of the stand area are in skid trails after
29 clearcutting, shelterwood, seed-tree, group selection, and single tree selection methods
30 respectively. Additionally, a study by Wert and Thomas (1981) looking at skid road
31 effects on Douglas-fir growth found 10% of their study area to be in skid roads 32 years

1 after harvest. These numbers seem lower than the values 25 to 30% in skid roads as
2 reported by Gessel (1955), Dryness (1965), and Froehlich (1973).

3
4 Based on the results from this study I assumed that higher compaction values
5 related to areas found in skid trails. By applying a conservative approach, there could be
6 the potential for 10% of an aspen clearcut site to contain skid trails, relating to a 4%
7 decline in overall productivity for a winter harvested site. A site with a higher area
8 impacted by harvesting, e.g., 20% of an aspen clearcut contain skid trails, would result in
9 an 8% decline in overall stand productivity. Based on the results of this study, summer
10 aspen clearcuts are more sensitive to soil compaction, and therefore projecting volume
11 estimates becomes even more significant in skid trails of summer cuts. A residual
12 overstory in combination with soil compaction would obviously reduce the productivity
13 on the skid trails, but the overstory would also impact the regeneration in the areas
14 between skid trails.

15
16 Therefore, among other factors when designing a timber management plan,
17 foresters must not only consider implications of harvest operations on potential soil
18 compaction, but the potential reduction in site productivity due to the aerial extent of
19 impact.

20 21 **Conclusions**

22
23 In summary, my study results indicate that various factors interact in the
24 regeneration of aspen stands. Winter clearcut harvests that take advantage of
25 belowground carbon storage and frozen soil conditions provide better conditions for
26 aspen regeneration. Summer harvests showed higher soil compaction, which may
27 discourage aspen regeneration in spots and increase the opportunity of other species
28 seeding in on the disturbed skid trails, thus allowing a diverse mixture of species to
29 become established. On the other hand, when only aspen are cut, leaving a few residuals
30 after harvest still allows aspen to sucker and dominate the regeneration. However,
31 density and growth of aspen regeneration will be reduced when residual overstory

- 1 remains after harvest. Furthermore, increased soil compaction and residual overstory left
- 2 after harvesting activities can interact and create conditions most detrimental to aspen
- 3 regeneration. Whether these reductions in regeneration are consequential at the end of a
- 4 rotation is not fully known and needs to be investigated further.

- 1 **Table 1.** Data for control conditions (plot 5 of transects) in aspen dominated stands
 2 separated by sites within harvest type. Values in parentheses are standard deviations.
 3 Site index values are for whole site.

Plot 5 (i.e., control conditions)							
Years Since Harvest	Season of Harvest ^a	Site Index	Residual Basal Area (m ² /ha)	Regen Density (trees/ha) of >2.54 cm DBH	Total Regen Density (trees/ha)	Maximum Regen Height (m)	Median Compaction (kPa)
Aspen Clearcut-Winter (residual BA < 1.0 m²/ha)							
4	W	23	2 (2.4)	5,500 (2,645.8)	30,500 (18,627.9)	5 (0.5)	3,224 (708.7)
8	W	24	1 (1.0)	9,750 (2,630.0)	16,000 (6,377.0)	7 (1.0)	5,344 (1,848.1)
5	W	23	0 (0)	9,500 (4,654.7)	28,250 (8,732.1)	6 (1.0)	2,924 (649.8)
6	W	23	0 (0.5)	2,000 (1,414.2)	9,500 (7,325.8)	5 (0.3)	4,499 (1,302.9)
6	W	23	0 (0)	5,500 (3,109.1)	35,500 (13,527.8)	6 (1.1)	6,423 (1,558.2)
11	W	23	0 (0)	8,750 (2,872.3)	25,000 (13,114.9)	8 (0.6)	4,849 (2,151.2)
11	W	15	0 (0)	5,000 (4,242.6)	23,750 (14,174.5)	5 (0.6)	2,374 (833.9)
Aspen Clearcut-Summer (residual BA < 1.0 m²/ha)							
6	S	24	1 (1.3)	4,250 (2,630.0)	-	6 (0.7)	1,675 (206.1)
7	S	24	0 (0)	8,250 (2,630.0)	29,500 (17,000.0)	9 (0.9)	3,712 (2,384.2)
6	S	24	0 (0.5)	7,500 (2,886.8)	22,500 (7,852.8)	7 (0.8)	925 (150.0)
5	S	26	1 (1.0)	3,000 (2,828.4)	31,750 (13,696.1)	5 (0.7)	3,861 (2,727.3)
7	S	23	0 (0)	7,000 (4,966.6)	-	7 (0.7)	1,250 (288.6)
4	S	20	0 (0.5)	4,000 (3,162.3)	64,000 (8,756.0)	5 (0.7)	3,424 (1,693.4)
Aspen Cut w/ Low Residual Overstory (residual BA = 3 ± 3.4 m²/ha)							
6	S	24	6 (2.4)	8,500 (4,795.8)	-	8 (0.6)	1,150 (147.2)
5	S	21	1 (0.8)	7,000 (3,741.7)	-	6 (0.3)	3,812 (753.0)
4	W	23	2 (1.6)	4,250 (2,217.4)	-	6 (0.8)	3,737 (1,387.3)
5	S	22	8 (4.8)	1,000 (8,16.5)	-	5 (0.3)	4,249 (932.5)
6	W	25	4 (3.4)	6,750 (2,362.9)	-	6 (0.4)	6,298 (787.2)
6	W	24	2 (1.6)	7,500 (4,434.7)	-	6 (1.3)	4,799 (803.9)
Aspen Cut w/ Heavy Residual Overstory (residual BA = 12 ± 8.1 m²/ha)							
5	S	21	5 (1.5)	2,250 (1,893.0)	-	5 (0.4)	2,381 (372.6)
6	W	20	18 (9.1)	250 (500.0)	-	6 (0)	550 (343.9)
6	S	21	18 (8.7)	1,250 (2,500.0)	-	6 (0)	1,968 (350.7)
7	W	22	18 (2.2)	0 (0)	-	-	1,125 (525.1)
6	W	15	4 (4.6)	6,750 (4,991.7)	-	8 (0.3)	2,066 (907.1)
6	S	17	15 (2.6)	3,000 (4,242.6)	-	7 (0.9)	1,112 (265.7)

4 ^aSeason of Harvest: W=winter, S=summer

5

1 **Table 2.** Study site averages for aspen dominated stands separated by harvest type.

2 Values in parentheses indicate standard deviation.

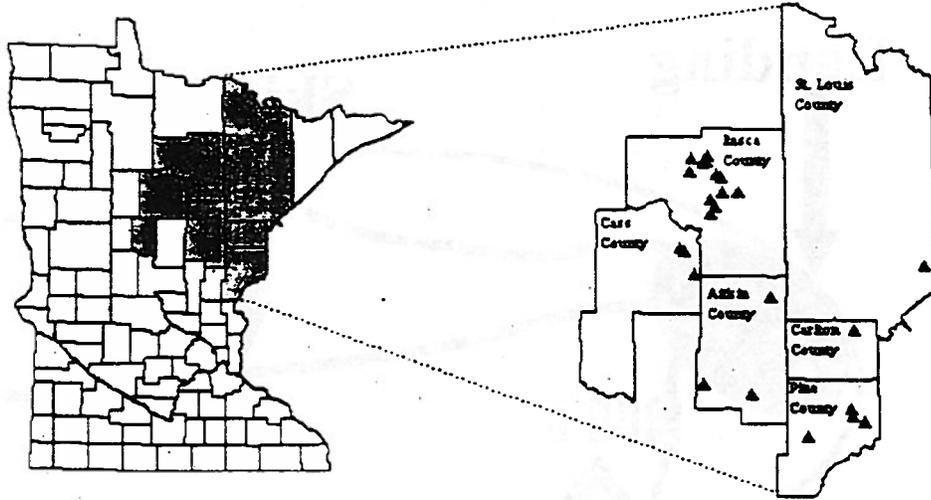
3

Harvest type	Residual Basal Area (m ² /ha)	Proportion of regeneration (%) that was aspen	Regeneration Density (trees/ha) of >2.54 cm DBH	Total Regeneration Density (trees/ha)	Maximum Regeneration Height (m)	Median Compaction (kPa)
Aspen Clearcut-Winter	<0 (0.8)	97	3,808 (3,644.5)	21,963 (19,280.4)	6 (1.3)	3,120 (1,991.0)
Aspen Clearcut-Summer	<0 (1.1)	97	4,143 (3,922.9)	18,643 (16,843.4)	6 (1.4)	4,494 (2,030.5)
Aspen Cut w/ Low Residual Overstory	3 (3.4)	99	3,758 (3,953.5)	-	6 (1.1)	4,152 (1,795.5)
Aspen Cut with Heavy Residual Overstory	12 (8.1)	95	1,842 (3,466.5)	-	6 (1.4)	1,904 (1,107.8)

4

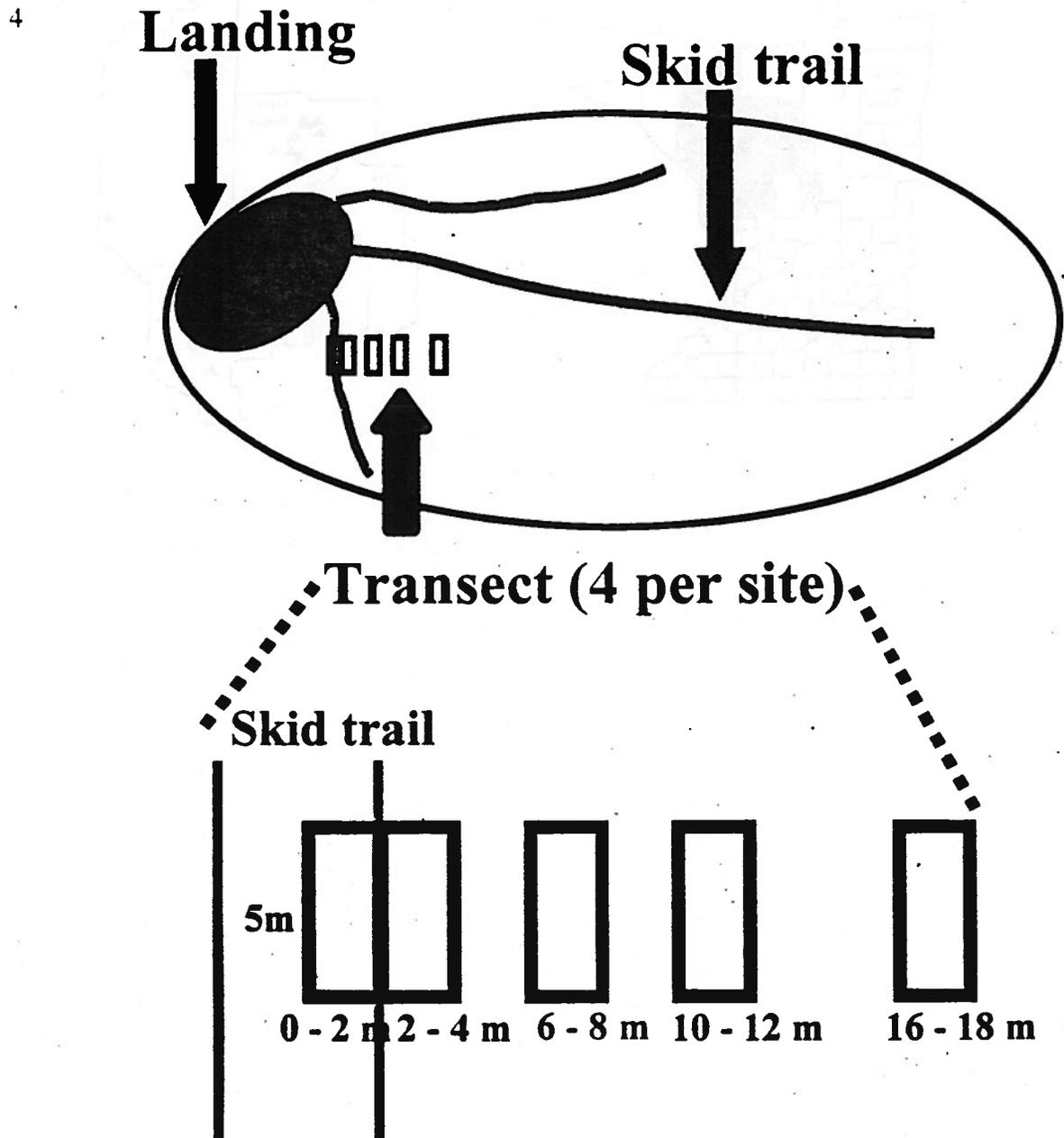
1 **Figure 1. Aspen dominated study site locations in Minnesota.**

2



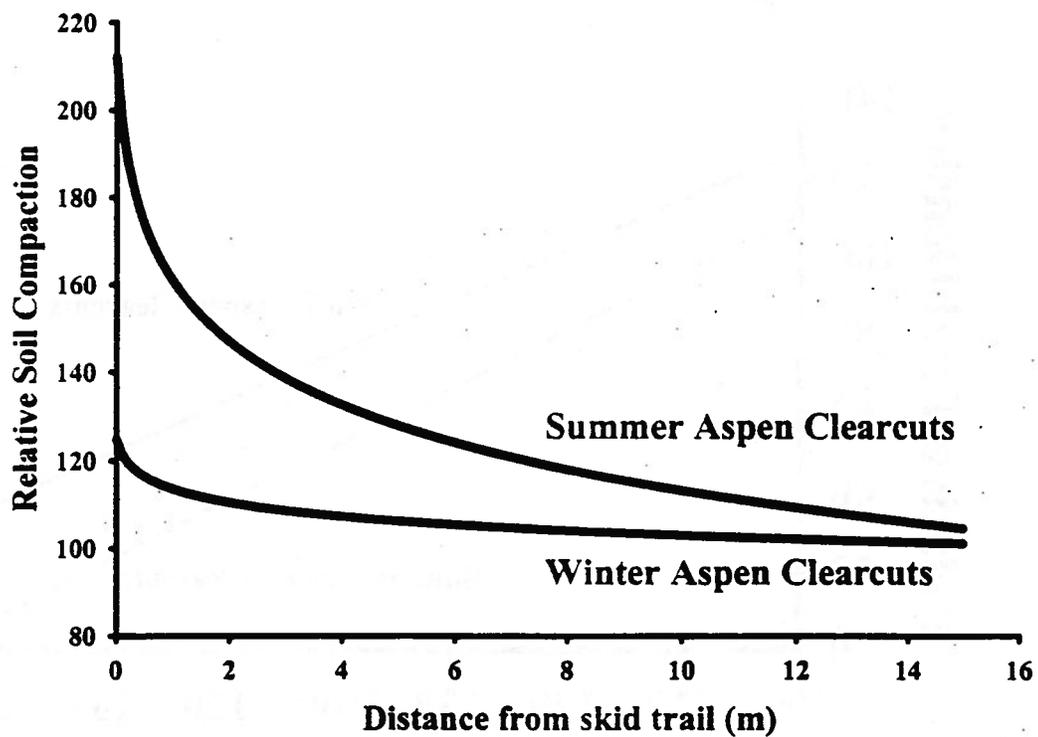
3

- 1 **Figure 2.** Regeneration plot layout within aspen dominated study sites. Five
2 regeneration plots were placed along four transects per site, comprising twenty
3 regeneration plots to investigate patterns of aspen regeneration following harvest.



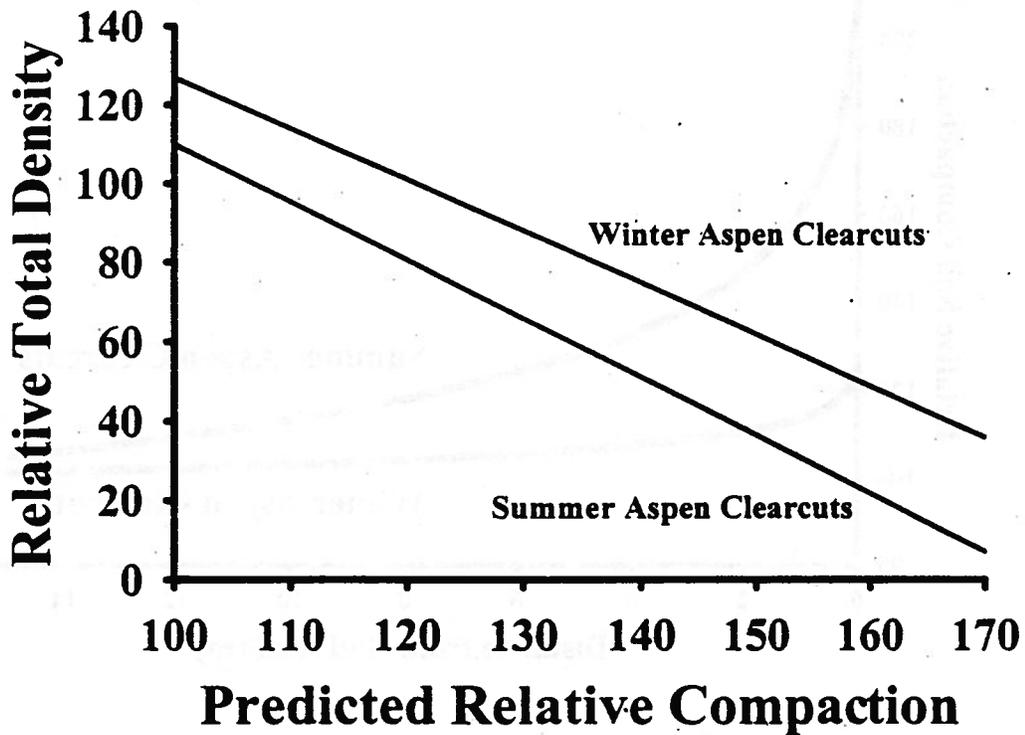
- 1 **Figure 3.** Relative soil compaction levels in summer vs. winter aspen clearcuts as a
- 2 function of distance from skid trail.

3

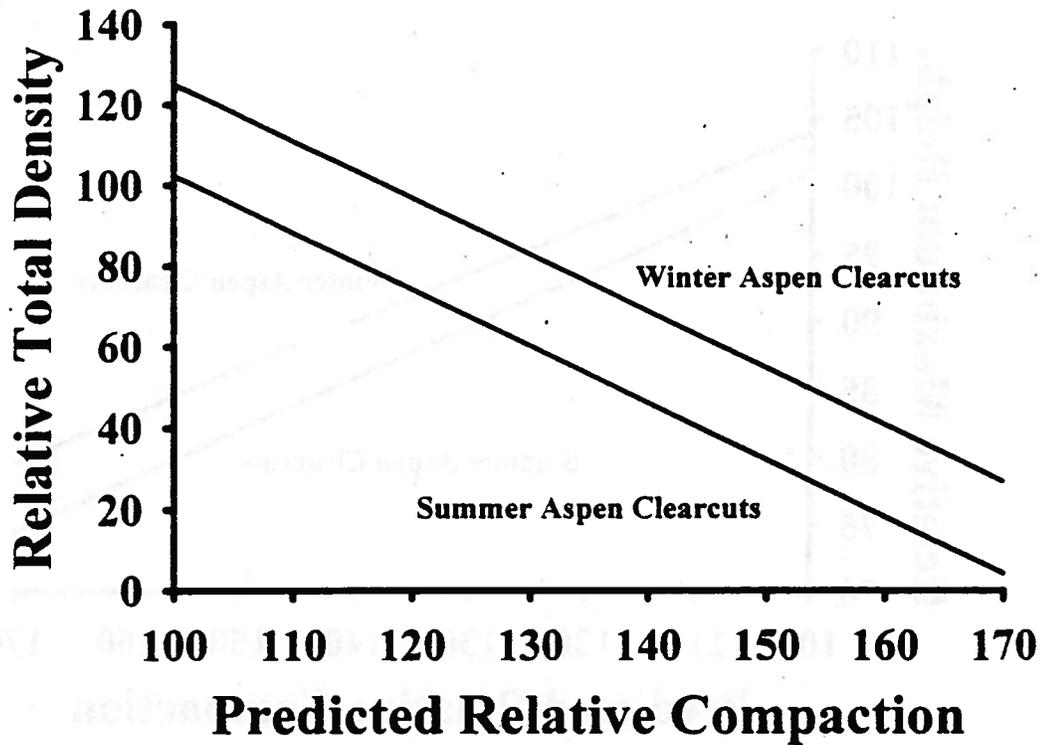


- 1 **Figure 4 a.** Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative total regeneration density
- 2 by season of harvest (see equation 3) for aspen clearcuts. Note, that intercept is at 100%
- 3 predicted compaction, i.e., control conditions.

4



- 1 **Figure 4 b.** Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative total regeneration density
2 by season of harvest (equation 4) for aspen clearcuts. Note, that intercept is at 100%
3 predicted compaction, i.e., control conditions.

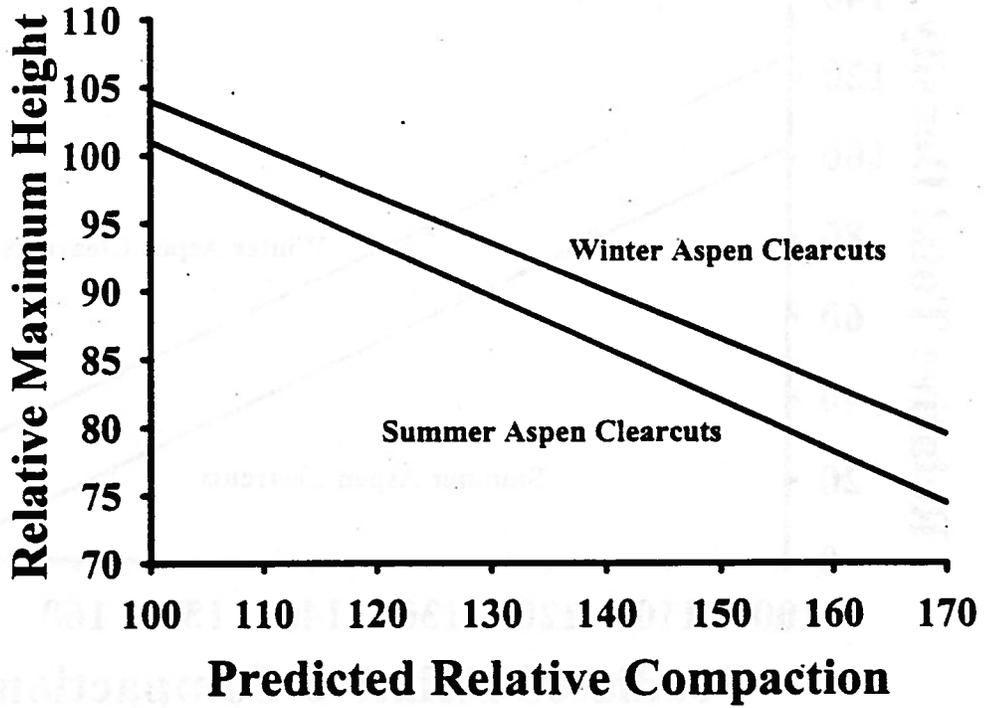


4

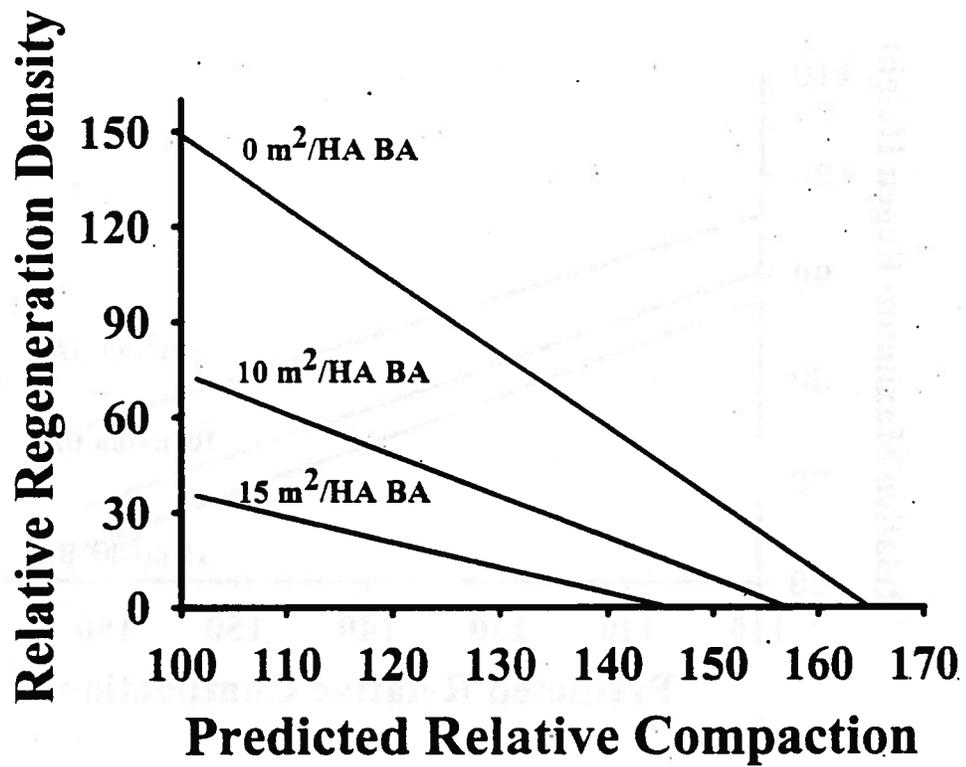
5

1 **Figure 4 c.** Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative maximum regeneration
2 height by season of harvest (equation 5) for aspen clearcuts. Note, that intercept is at
3 100% predicted compaction, i.e., control conditions.

4



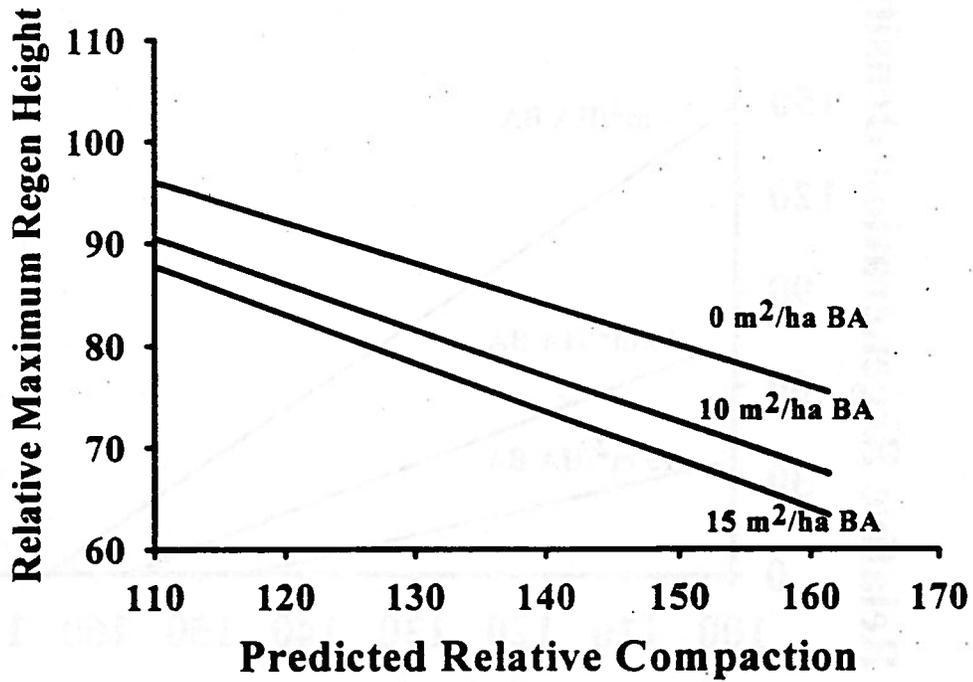
- 1 **Figure 5 a.** Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative regeneration density
- 2 according to three levels of residual basal area. Equation 6 was used to determine
- 3 interactive effects of soil compaction and residual basal area on aspen density response.
- 4 Note, that intercept is at 100% predicted compaction, i.e., control conditions.



5

6

- 1 **Figure 5 b.** Predicted relative soil compaction versus relative maximum regeneration
- 2 height according to three levels of residual basal area. Equation 7 was used to determine
- 3 interactive effects of soil compaction and residual basal area on aspen height response.
- 4 Note, that intercept is at 100% predicted compaction, i.e., control conditions.



- 5
- 6
- 7

Chapter Two Reference List

- 1
2
- 3 Ahlgren, C.E., and I.F. Ahlgren. 1983. The human impact on Northern forest
4 ecosystems. P. 33-51 *in* The Great Lakes Forest: An environmental and social
5 history. Flader, S.L. (ed.). University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, MN.
- 6 American Society of Agricultural Engineers (ASAE). 1990. Soil cone penetrometer.
7 ASAE Standards S313.2:567.
- 8 Bates, P.C., Blinn, C.R., and A.A. Alm. 1990. A survey of the harvesting histories of
9 some poorly regenerated aspen stands in northern Minnesota. P. 221-230 *in*
10 Proceedings of 1989 Aspen Symposium. Adams, R.D. (ed.). USDA For. Serv.
11 Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-140.
- 12 Bates, P.C., Blinn, C.R., Alm, A.A., and D.A. Perala. 1989. Aspen stand development
13 following harvest in the Lake States region. *North. J. Appl. For.* 6(4):178-183.
- 14 Bella, I.E. 1986. Logging practices and subsequent development of aspen stands in east-
15 central Saskatchewan. *Forestry Chronicle* 62(2):81-83.
- 16 Bennie, A.T.P., and R. duT. Burger. 1988. Penetration resistance of fine sandy apedal
17 soils as affected by relative bulk density, water content, and texture. *S. Afr. J.*
18 *Plant Soil* 5(1):5-10.
- 19 Bragg, W.C., Ostrofsky, W.D., and B.F. Hoffman Jr. 1994. Residual tree damage
20 estimates from partial cutting simulation. *Forest Products Journal* 44(7/8):19-22.
- 21 Chancellor, W.J. 1977. Compaction of soil by agricultural equipment. Dept. Agric. Sci.
22 Univ. of Calif. Bull 1881.
- 23 Curtis, J.T. 1959. The vegetation of Wisconsin: An ordination of plant communities.
24 University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, WI. 388 p.
- 25 DeByle, N.V., and R.P. Winokur (eds.). 1985. Aspen: ecology and management in the
26 western United States. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-119. 283 p.

- 1 Dyrness, C.T. 1965. Soil surface conditions following tractor and high-lead logging in
2 the Oregon Cascades. *J. For.* 63:272-275.
- 3 Ek, A.R., and J.D. Brodie. 1975. A preliminary analysis of short-rotation aspen
4 management. *Can. J. For. Res.* 5:245-258.
- 5 Farmer, R.E. 1962. Aspen root sucker formation and apical dominance. *For. Sci.* 8:403-
6 410.
- 7 Ffolliott, P.F., and G.J. Gottfried. 1991. Mixed conifer and aspen regeneration in small
8 clearcuts within a partially harvested Arizona mixed conifer forest. USDA For.
9 Serv. Res. Pap. RM-294. 9 p.
- 10 Froehlich, H.A. 1973. The impact of even-age forest management on physical properties
11 of soils. P. 199-220 *in* Even-age management symposium proceedings, Corvallis,
12 OR Herman, R.K, and D.P. Lavender, (eds.). Oregon State Univ., Corvallis.
- 13 Froehlich, H.A. 1979. Soil compaction from logging equipment: Effects on growth of
14 young ponderosa pine. *J. Soil and Water Conservation* 34:276-278.
- 15 Froehlich, H.A., and E.R. Berglund. 1978. The effect of soil compaction by logging on
16 forest productivity: final report. Forest Engineering Dept., Oregon State
17 University. 40 p.
- 18 Graham, S.A., Harrison, R.P.Jr., and C.E. Westell Jr. 1963. *Aspens: phoenix trees of the*
19 *Great Lakes region*. University of Michigan Press, Ann Arbor, MI. 272 p.
- 20 Grey, D.C., and E.O. Jacobs. 1987. The impact of harvesting on forest site quality. *S.*
21 *Afr. For. J.* 140:60-66.
- 22 Grigal, D.F. 1973. Note on the hydrometer method of particle-size analysis. *Minnesota*
23 *Forestry Research Notes* 245.
- 24 Hatchell, G.E., Ralston, C.W., and R.R. Foil. 1970. Soil disturbances in logging. *J. For.*
25 68(12):772-775.

- 1 Holman, G.T., Knight, F.B., and R.A. Struchtemeyer. 1978. The effects of mechanized
2 harvesting on soil conditions in the spruce-fir region of north-central Maine.
3 Univ. Maine Life Sci. and Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 751.
- 4 Hove, G.P., Blinn, C.R., and R.D. Adams. 1990. Aspen stand development in Beltrami
5 County, Minnesota. P. 113-121 *in* Proceedings of 1989 Aspen Symposium.
6 Adams, R.D. (ed.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-140.
- 7 Howard, A.F. 1996. Damage to residual trees from cable yarding when partial cutting
8 second-growth stands in coastal British Columbia. *Can. J. For. Res.* 26(8):1392-
9 1396.
- 10 Howard, R.F., and M.J. Singer. 1981. Measuring forest soil bulk density using irregular
11 hole, paraffin clod, and air permeability. *For. Sci.* 27(2):316-322.
- 12 Huffman, R.D., Fajvan, M.A. and P.B. Wood. 1999. Effects of residual overstory on
13 aspen development in Minnesota. *Can. J. For. Res.* 29:284-289.
- 14 Kochenderfer, J.N. 1977. Area in skidroads, truck roads, and landings in the central
15 Appalachians. *J. For.* 75:507-508.
- 16 Mace, A.C.Jr. 1971. Effect of mechanized harvesting on the forest: Soil and water
17 aspects. P. 5-13 *in* Proceedings of the conference on biological and economic
18 considerations in mechanized timber harvesting. Misc. Rep. 116. University of
19 Minnesota, College of Forestry, St. Paul, MN.
- 20 Marshall, T.J., and J.W. Holmes. 1979. *Soil Physics*. Cambridge University Press,
21 Cambridge. 349 p.
- 22 Martin, C.W. 1988. Soil disturbance by logging in New England - review and
23 management recommendations. *North. J. Appl. For.* 5(1):30-34.
- 24 Miles, P.D., Chen, C.M., and E.C. Leatherberry. 1995. *Minnesota Forest Statistics*,
25 1990, revised. USDA For. Serv. Res. Bull. NC-158. 138 p.

- 1 Moehring, D.M., and I.K. Rawls. 1970. Detrimental effects of wet weather logging. J.
2 For. 68:166-167.
- 3 Murphy, G. 1982. Soil damage associated with production thinning. New Zealand J.
4 Forestry Sci. 12(2):281-292.
- 5 Navratil, S. 1991. Regeneration challenges. P. 15-27 in *Aspen Management in the 21st*
6 *Century. Proceedings of a symposium.* Navratil S., and P.B. Capman, (eds.).
7 Forestry Canada Northwest Region, Northern Forestry Centre, and Poplar Council
8 of Canada, Edmonton, Alberta.
- 9 Nyland, R.D., Behrend, D.F., Craul, P J., and H.E. Eichelberger. 1977. Effects of logging
10 in northern hardwood forests. *Tappi* 60(6):58-61.
- 11 Oliver, C.D., and B.C. Larson. 1996. *Forest stand dynamics.* Updated ed. John Wiley
12 & Sons, New York, NY. 520 p.
- 13 Perala, D.A. 1977. *Manager's handbook for aspen in the North-Central States.* USDA
14 For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-36. 30 p.
- 15 Perala, D.A. 1990. *Populus tremuloides* Michx. Quaking Aspen. P. 555-569 in *Silvics*
16 *of North America, Volume 2, Hardwoods.* Burns, R.M., and B.H. Honkala (eds.).
17 USDA For. Serv. Agric. Handb. No. 654, US Gov. Print. Off., Washington, DC.
- 18 Peterson, E.B., and N.M. Peterson. 1992. Ecology, management, and use of aspen and
19 balsam poplar in the prairie provinces, Canada. *For. Can. Northwest Reg., North.*
20 *For. Cent. Spec. Rep. 1.* 252 p.
- 21 Peterson, E.B., and N.M. Peterson. 1996. Ecology and silviculture of trembling aspen.
22 P. 31-51 in *Ecology and Management of British Columbia Hardwoods FRDA II,*
23 *FRDA Report 255. Canada-British Columbia Partnership Agreement on Forest*
24 *Resources Development, Canada.*
- 25 Puettmann, K.J., and A. Ek. 1999. Status and trends of silvicultural practices in
26 Minnesota. *North. J. Appl. For.* 16(3):160-166.

- 1 Raile, G.K., and J.T. Hahn. 1982. The extent and characteristics of low productivity
2 aspen areas in Minnesota. USDA For. Serv. Res. Bull. NC-61. 36 p.
- 3 Reisinger, T.W., and P.E. Pope. 1991. Impact of timber harvesting on residual trees in a
4 central hardwood forest in Indiana. P. 82-91 *in* Proceedings of 8th Central
5 Hardwood Forest Conference, McCormick, L.H., and K.W. Gottschalk (eds.).
6 USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-148.
- 7 Ruark, G.A., Mader, D.L., and T.A. Tattar. 1982. The influence of soil compaction and
8 aeration on the root growth and vigour of trees -a literature review. I.
9 *Arboricultural Journal* 6(4):251-265.
- 10 SAS Institute Inc. 1996. JMP start statistics. Version 3.1.6.2. Duxbury Press, Belmont,
11 Calif. 522 p.
- 12 Schier, G.A. 1976. Physiological and environmental factors controlling vegetative
13 regeneration of aspen. P. 20-23 *in* Utilization and marketing as tools for aspen
14 management in the Rocky Mountains: Proceedings of the symposium. USDA
15 For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-29.
- 16 Schier, G.A. 1981. Physiological research on adventitious shoot development in aspen
17 roots. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-107. 12 p.
- 18 Schier, G.A., Shepperd W.D., and J.R Jones. 1985. Regeneration. P. 197-208 *in* Aspen:
19 Ecology and Management in the Western United States, DeByle, N.V., and
20 Winokur, R.P. (eds.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-119.
- 21 Schier, G.A., and A.D. Smith. 1979. Sucker regeneration in a Utah aspen clone after
22 clear-cutting, partial cutting, scarification, and girdling. USDA For. Serv. Res.
23 Note INT-253. 6 p.
- 24 Schier, G.A., and J.C. Zasada. 1973. Role of carbohydrate reserves in the development
25 of root suckers in *Populus tremuloides*. *Can. J. For. Res.* 3:243-250.
- 26 Shepperd, W.D. 1993. The effect of harvesting activities on soil compaction, root

- 1 'damage, and suckering in Colorado aspen. *West. J. Appl. For.* 8(2):62-66.
- 2 Shetron, S.G., Sturos, J.A., Padley, E., and C. Trettin. 1988. Forest soil compaction:
3 effect of multiple passes and loadings on wheel track surface soil bulk density.
4 *North. J. Appl. For.* 5(2):120-123.
- 5 Smidt, M.F. 1996. Production, soil disturbance, and regeneration of wide-tire skidder
6 harvests of quaking aspen stands in east-central Minnesota. Ph.D. dissertation,
7 University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota. 120 p.
- 8 Steinbr nner, E.C., and S.P. Gessel. 1955. The effect of tractor logging on physical
9 properties of some forest soils in southwestern Washington. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am.*
10 *Proc.* 19:372-376.
- 11 Steneker, G.A. 1974. Factors affecting suckering of trembling aspen. *For. Chron.* 50:32-
12 34.
- 13 Stoeckeler, J.H. 1947. When is plantation release most effective? *J. For.* 45:265-271.
- 14 Stoeckeler, J.H., and J.W. Macon. 1956. Regeneration of aspen cutover areas in
15 northern Wisconsin. *J. For.* 54:13-16.
- 16 Stokes, B.J., Kluender, R.A., Klepac, J.F., and D.A. Lortz. 1997. Harvesting impacts as
17 a function of removal intensity. P. 207-216 *in* *Forest operations and*
18 *environmental protection: proceedings of a symposium organized by IUFRO*
19 *Project Group P3.11.00*, Stokes, B.J., Lauhanen, R., and J.F. Klepac. (eds.).
20 *USDA For. Serv., Southern Research Station, Auburn, Ala.*
- 21 Stone, D.M., and J.D. Elioff. 1998. Soil properties and aspen development five years
22 after compaction and forest floor removal. *Can. J. Soil Sci.* 78:51-58.
- 23 Tew, R.K. 1970. Root carbohydrate reserves in vegetative reproduction of aspen. *For.*
24 *Sci.* 16:318-320.
- 25 Vora, R.S. 1988. Potential soil compaction forty years after logging in northeastern

- 1 California. Great Basin Naturalist 48(1):117-120.
- 2 Weigle, W.G., and E.H. Frothingham. 1911. The aspens: their growth and management.
3 U. S. Dept. Agric. For. Serv. Bul. 93.
- 4 Williamson, J. R., and W. A. Neilsen. 2000. The influence of forest site on rate and
5 extent of soil compaction and profile disturbance of skid trails during ground-
6 based harvesting. Can. J. For. Res. 30:1196-1205.
- 7 Youngberg, C.T. 1959. The influence of soil conditions following tractor logging, on
8 the growth of planted Douglas-fir seedlings. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 23:76-78.
- 9 Zehngraff, P.J. 1946. Season of cutting affects aspen sprouting. Lake States Forest
10 Experiment Station, St. Paul, MN. Tech. Note No. 250.
- 11 Zehngraff, P.J. 1947. Response of young aspen suckers to overhead shade. USDA For.
12 Serv. Tech. Note No. 278.
- 13 Zehngraff, P.J. 1949. Aspen as a forest crop in the Lake States. J. For. 47:555-565.
- 14 Zon, R. 1928. Timber growing and logging practice in the Lake States. U. S. Dept.
15 Agric. Dept. Bull. 1496.
- 16

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Chapter 3

**Residual forest canopy and soil disturbance influences on tree regeneration
in Northern Hardwood stands: A literature review**

1 Introduction

2
3 Natural and human-induced disturbances alter the dynamics of northern forest
4 ecosystems, and perpetually modify a landscape. Silvicultural systems attempt to modify
5 stand characteristics by simulating natural disturbance regimes, therefore influencing
6 stand density and composition of post-harvest vegetation. Forest managers must evaluate
7 how disturbances impact stand development, how they interact with vegetation
8 composition, and then incorporate these considerations into the planning process. Forests
9 of the Great Lakes region, specifically of Minnesota, provide opportunities to investigate
10 disturbance patterns and the potential for management objectives to modify stand
11 characteristics. White pine (*Pinus strobus* L.), red pine (*P. resinosa* Aiton.), jack pine (*P.*
12 *banksiana* Lambert.), northern hardwood species (e. g. sugar maple (*Acer saccharum*
13 Marsh.), paper birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh.), basswood (*Tilia americana* L.), and
14 aspen (*Populus spp.*) largely dominated pre-settlement timberlands of Minnesota and the
15 Lake States (Ahlgren and Ahlgren 1983, Curtis 1959). During the 1830's to 1900's, the
16 timber industry expanded, resulting in the logging and subsequent burning of many red
17 and white pine forests. The decline of once dominant pine forests provided an
18 opportunity for aspen to expand its dominance. Fire suppression in historically pine
19 dominated stands also provided an avenue for compositional shifts to a larger hardwood
20 component (Host et al. 1987). Increased timber harvesting also influenced northern
21 hardwood stand composition in instances where selective hardwood harvests took place
22 (Ahlgren and Ahlgren 1983). Due to only partial harvests of hardwood species, northern
23 hardwood stands have mostly retained their tree species densities and diversities (Curtis
24 1959).

25
26 Timber species comprising the northern hardwood ecotype provide significant
27 proportions of the Lake States' forest harvest. In addition to their value as a timber
28 resource, hardwoods are also valued for aesthetic, recreational, and wildlife purposes. In
29 the Lake States, research and management objectives for northern hardwood types
30 traditionally concentrated on single tree and group selection (Tubbs 1977). The species
31 comprising a northern hardwood stand differ in their growth rates and shade tolerances,

1 making stand analysis, management prescription, and silvicultural implementation more
2 difficult than in pure aspen stands. Furthermore, many uneven-aged northern hardwood
3 stands present a greater complexity of regeneration issues not encountered in vegetatively
4 regenerated even-aged stands. Over the last four decades, hardwood managers and
5 researchers have increased application of even-aged practices to enhance their options for
6 harvesting efficiency, stand maintenance, compositional shifts, and multiple use factors
7 (Nyland 1986, Wang and Nyland 1996). Although modifying density through harvest
8 regimes achieves control on future regeneration of forest stands, the negative effects of
9 site disturbance must also influence a management plan. This paper focuses on the
10 ecology of northern hardwood stands, the influence management options have on
11 hardwood ecosystems, and the interacting effects of environment and management on
12 future stand composition.

13

14 **Ecology of Northern Hardwood Tree Species**

15

16 Northern hardwoods (excluding aspen) comprise roughly one-third of
17 Minnesota's timberland with most of these stands located in the central and southeastern
18 sections of the state (Miles et al. 1995). Main species composing Minnesota's northern
19 hardwood forests include sugar maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh.), basswood (*Tilia*
20 *americana* L.), northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.), red maple (*A. rubrum* L.), paper
21 birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh.), yellow birch (*B. allegheniensis* Briton), green ash
22 (*Fraxinus pennsylvanica* Marsh.), black ash (*F. nigra* Marsh.), and ironwood (*Ostrya*
23 *virginiana* (Mill.) K. Koch); with smaller associations of trembling aspen (*Populus*
24 *tremuloides* Michx.), bigtooth aspen (*P. grandidentata* Michx.), white oak (*Q. alba* L.),
25 bur oak (*Q. macrocarpa* Michx.), and American elm (*Ulmus americana* L.).

26

27 The majority of northern hardwood forests contain long-lived tree species which
28 at advanced stages, respond positively to overstory release (Tubbs 1977). Under the right
29 conditions, most hardwood species have the potential to regenerate prolifically by seed,
30 and vegetatively regenerate from stump sprouts. Some species of hardwoods regenerate
31 well under heavy overstory shade, while others are shade intolerant and require canopy

1 gaps or clearings to survive. Several species such as yellow and paper birch experience
2 enhanced survival and germination on recently disturbed seedbeds (Marquis 1965). Due
3 to these variations in its component species' ecology, the northern hardwood forest
4 presents managers with a diversity of silvicultural options. Among other factors,
5 deciding what level of overstory removal should be left after a harvest depends on
6 landowner objectives, site-specific environmental variables, species' competitive
7 abilities, and pre- and post-harvest conditions.

8
9 The factor most limiting to the initiation and growth of tree seedlings may be the
10 amount of light reaching the forest floor (Canham 1988, Kobe et al. 1995, Walters and
11 Reich 1996). Different species experience a trade-off in their competitive abilities; shade
12 tolerant species generally grow slowly and efficiently in low light where intolerants may
13 die of suppression (Canham 1985, Canham 1989, Kobe et al. 1995). In the absence of
14 major disturbances, shade tolerant species eventually replace intolerants. Alternatively,
15 intolerant species can dominate exposed areas where they are able to grow faster and at
16 least in the short term, outcompete shade tolerant species (e. g. Kobe et al. 1995, Marks
17 1975, Runkle 1981, Hibbs 1982, Canham and Marks 1985). Some shade tolerant species
18 may survive in the understory of exposed areas though or seed in, and can eventually
19 replace pioneer intolerant species. These mechanistic differences in shade tolerance as a
20 response to gap dynamics largely drive forest succession (Barnes et al. 1998, Walters and
21 Reich 1997). Species community structure shifts along gradients of gap size (McClure
22 and Lee 1993) depending on the disturbance and competitive strategies of pre- and post-
23 harvest vegetation. Phillips and Shure (1990) found tree species richness to increase
24 along a gradient of increasing gap size. Tree species of Minnesota's northern hardwood
25 forest ecosystem display these variations in shade tolerance, and in turn respond
26 differently to gradients of overstory release.

27
28 Scientific studies investigate species specific competitive strategies which
29 managers can then extrapolate to make implications for many different ecosystem types.
30 Sugar maple is among the most shade tolerant species, and it commonly dominates in late
31 successional sites on better soils (Curtis 1959, Walters and Reich 1997, Host et al. 1987).

1 Red maple also tolerates shade and it responds well to disturbance or thinning (e. g.
2 Trimble 1974, Marquis 1969, Strong and Erdmann 2000, Lorimer 1980, Miller 1997,
3 Palik and Pregitzer 1992) based on its ability to exploit higher resource levels (Tift and
4 Fajvan 1999). Erdman et al. (1985) found younger red maples to put on up to 70%
5 greater diameter growth 7 years following thinning. In general, oaks are less shade
6 tolerant than maples, and exhibit enhanced growth following overstory release (Larsen et
7 al. 1997, Allen and Marquis 1970, Clatterbuck et al. 1999). Several studies suggest
8 however, that under complete overstory removal, i.e. clearcuts, oak seedlings regenerate
9 but may be outcompeted by more successful intolerant species (O'Hara 1986, Ward and
10 Stephens 1999). Other studies point out the decline in oak-dominated ecosystems due to
11 their poor ability to outcompete more shade tolerant species such as red maple (Lorimer
12 1984, Beck and Hooper 1986). To successfully maintain species diversity and adequate
13 stocking levels, it is often important to consider these species-specific differences in
14 regards to shade tolerance. In addition to its competitive abilities, a tree's regeneration
15 success depends on stand level properties that may or may not be under a manager's
16 control, such as site quality and parent stand composition.

17

18 Silvicultural manipulations of a forest stand often attempt to simulate natural
19 patterns of disturbance to achieve certain management objectives. Studies indicate that
20 hardwood thinnings increase crop-tree basal area and diameter growth of tolerant and
21 some intolerant seedlings along a gradient of increasing residual basal areas (Marquis
22 1969, Greene et al. 1999, Allen and Marquis 1970, Miller 1997, Minckler and Woerheide
23 1965). In contrast, other research finds near to complete overstory removal enhances tree
24 survival and growth, most commonly for shade intolerants and intermediates (Myers and
25 Buchman 1988, Walters and Nyland 1989). The overstory composition and degree of
26 basal area removal can shift species distributions to a desirable composition of high value
27 species, (Wang and Nyland 1993, Marquis 1967) or undesirable composition of low
28 quality competition species (Bjorkbom and Walters 1986). The presence of advance
29 regeneration is often considered to be the critical factor that determines future stand
30 composition (Larsen et al. 1997, Bjorkbom and Walters 1986, Greene et al. 1999). Wang
31 and Nyland (1993) found that following a hardwood clearcut, advance seedlings and

1 stump sprouts contribute to the regeneration of both tolerant and intolerant tree species.
2 To maintain silvicultural control over future stand composition, land managers
3 manipulate both residual canopy and advance regeneration densities.
4

5 **Harvesting Impacts on Northern Hardwood Stands**

6
7 The degree of site disturbance a harvest activity creates depends on several factors
8 such as level of overstory removal, season of harvest, skid trail layout, soil texture and
9 moisture content, slope, aspect, and damage to advance regeneration and residuals.
10 Intensity of harvesting can be characterized by the amount of overstory removed and by
11 its effects on post-harvest stand vegetation. A clearcutting regime removes most or all of
12 the existing overstory and may reduce survival of advance regeneration by creating a
13 harsh environment. As stated before, in harvested stands where shade tolerant species
14 previously inhabited a stand, under these conditions future composition may shift to favor
15 early successional, shade intolerant species (Canham 1985, 1989, Kobe et al. 1995).
16 Larsen et al. (1997) found oaks to regenerate best under low residual basal areas of less
17 than 14 m²/ha. Strong and Erdmann (2000) found similar results for red maple saplings
18 responding with 2.5 times the diameter growth under a residual canopy of 9.2 m²/ha as
19 compared to under the control stand with a residual canopy of 27.2 m²/ha. Conversely,
20 limited overstory removal may shade and inhibit regeneration of desired shade intolerants
21 (e. g. Kobe et al. 1995, Marks 1975, Runkle 1981, Canham and Marks 1985).
22

23 Although various species respond differently along a gradient of overstory
24 removal, and some tree species respond positively to site disturbance that creates optimal
25 seedbed conditions; severe soil disturbance inhibits regeneration of most northern
26 hardwoods. Harvest machinery traffic creates a skid trail system resulting in soil
27 compaction that may significantly influence tree regeneration and represents another
28 factor that can be used to characterize site damage. The section on aspen regeneration
29 (Chapter one) covers these issues in far greater depth, but it also applies to northern
30 hardwood regeneration. Season of harvest influences the success of regeneration, for
31 there is likely less damage to fine root systems when soils are frozen. As stated

1 previously in Chapter one, soil bulk density reflects the gradient of soil compaction
2 created from harvest activities. Several studies revealed significantly fewer seedlings on
3 compacted areas such as skid trails, compared to less compacted areas (Nyland et al.
4 1977, Moehring and Rawls 1970, Ruark et al. 1982, Corns 1988). Alternatively, several
5 northern hardwood species respond positively to soil disturbance. Marquis (1965) found
6 higher densities of paper and yellow birch in disturbed, skid trail areas as compared to
7 adjacent, non-skid trail areas.

8
9 The differences between aspen and hardwood ecology reflect their different
10 susceptibilities to soil compaction. Aspen respond vigorously to harvesting by root and
11 sometimes stump sprouting. Nearly all northern hardwood species exhibit sprouting
12 abilities, but also rely on advance reproduction, seed dispersal from residuals, and seed
13 bank stores for future stand composition. Site disturbance can also discourage survival of
14 advance regeneration and residual overstory trees by removing smaller diameter
15 individuals and damaging trees left on a site. In order to measure the magnitudes of site
16 disturbance effects on future stand composition and density, researchers employ several
17 different methodologies listed in the next section.

18 19 **Quantifying Future Hardwood Stand Composition and Productivity**

20
21 Foresters may rely on pre-existing stand data as well as post-harvest outcomes to
22 make silvicultural prescriptions, assess the outcome of a certain management regime, and
23 to predict impacts on future stand structure and composition. As a measure of the amount
24 of residual forest canopy resulting from a harvest regime, basal area commonly indicates
25 potential overstory effects on post-harvest vegetation (Greene et al. 1999). Other studies
26 consider percent canopy cover a better representation of the degree of residual shading on
27 regenerating stands (Huffmann et al. 1999). Managers also consider the potential
28 influence of overstory composition on understory vegetation. To assess site damage from
29 harvesting operations, soil compaction helps characterize the degree of traffic damage.
30 Soil bulk density samples indicate levels of compaction, as do instruments that measure a
31 soil's resistance to penetration, e. g. soil cone penetrometers. Describing vegetation

1 response along a gradient of soil compaction provides forest managers with valuable
2 information regarding the impact of harvest operations.

3
4 Species composition by percent cover commonly describes the status of
5 understory forest vegetation. Assigning a percent cover value to existing vegetation
6 indicates the degree of dominance each species contributes to current stand composition.
7 By dividing stand components into height strata, foresters can then examine species
8 diversity among the regeneration vegetation (understory), advance regeneration
9 (midstory), and residual overstory. Among all other factors listed previously in this
10 chapter, understory and midstory compositional analyses then help to determine the
11 degree to which overstory basal area removal influences individual species' competitive
12 strategies. Quantifying the effects of human-induced disturbance regimes allows forest
13 managers to investigate the patterns of silvicultural manipulation that successfully alter
14 forest stand dynamics, and to predict future patterns of development and productivity.

15

Chapter Three Reference List

- 1
2
- 3 Ahlgren, C.E., and I.F. Ahlgren. 1983. The human impact on Northern forest
4 ecosystems. P. 33-51 *in* The Great Lakes Forest: An environmental and social
5 history. Flader, S.L. (ed.). University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, MN.
- 6 Allen, R.H., and D.A. Marquis. 1970. Effect of thinning on height and diameter growth
7 of oak and yellow-poplar saplings. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-173. 11 p.
- 8 American Society of Agricultural Engineers (ASAE). 1990. Soil cone penetrometer.
9 ASAE Standards S313.2:567.
- 10 Andersen, J.L., Grigal, D.F., and T.H. Cooper. 1996. Soils and landscapes of Minnesota.
11 University of Minnesota: Minnesota Extension Service, St. Paul, MN. 8 p.
- 12 Barnes, B.V., Zak, D.R., Denton, S.R., and S.H. Spurr. 1998. Forest Ecology. 4th ed.
13 John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New York, NY. 774 p.
- 14 Bates, P.C., Blinn, C.R., and A.A. Alm. 1990. A survey of the harvesting histories of
15 some poorly regenerated aspen stands in northern Minnesota. P. 221-230 *in*
16 Proceedings of 1989 Aspen Symposium. Adams, R.D. (ed.). USDA For. Serv.
17 Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-140.
- 18 Beck, D.E., and R.M. Hooper. 1986. Development of a southern Appalachian hardwood
19 stand after clearcutting. South. J. Appl. For. 10:168-172.
- 20 Béland, M., and Y. Bergeron. 1993. Ecological factors affecting abundance of
21 commercial species advance growth in jack pine (*Pinus banksiana* Lamb.) stands
22 of the boreal forest of north-western Quebec. For. Chron. 69:561-568.
- 23 Bennie, A.T.P., and R. duT. Burger. 1988. Penetration resistance of fine sandy apedal
24 soils as affected by relative bulk density, water content, and texture. S. Afr. J.
25 Plant Soil 5(1):5-10.
- 26 Bjorkbom, J.C., and R.S. Walters. 1986. Allegheny hardwood regeneration response to

- 1 , even-age harvesting methods. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-581.
- 2 Bragg, W.C., Ostrofsky, W.D., and B.F. Hoffman Jr. 1994. Residual tree damage
3 estimates from partial cutting simulation. *Forest Products Journal* 44(7/8):19-22.
- 4 Burns, R.M., and Honkala, B.H. 1990. *Silvics of North America: Volume 2, Hardwoods.*
5 US Dept. Agric. For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 654.
- 6 Canham, C. D. 1985. Suppression and release during canopy recruitment in *Acer*
7 *saccharum*. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 112:134-145.
- 8 Canham, C.D. 1989. Different responses to gaps among shade-tolerant tree species.
9 *Ecology* 70(3):548-550.
- 10 Canham, C.D. 1988. Growth and canopy architecture of shade tolerant trees: response to
11 canopy gaps. *Ecology* 69(3):786-795.
- 12 Canham, C.D. and P. L. Marks. 1985. The response of woody plants to disturbance:
13 patterns of establishment and growth. P. 197-216 *in* *The ecology of natural*
14 *disturbance and patch dynamics*, Pickett, T.A., and P. White (eds.). Academic
15 Press, Orlando, FL.
- 16 Clatterbuck, W.K., Blackley, P., and P. Yielding. 1999. Development of oak
17 regeneration nine years after shelterwood cutting and clearcutting on the coastal
18 plain of west Tennessee. P. 189-194 *in* *Proceedings, 12th central hardwood forest*
19 *conference*, Stringer, J.W., and D.L. Loftis (eds.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech.
20 Rep. SRS-24.
- 21 Corns, I.G.W. 1988. Compaction by forestry equipment and effects on coniferous
22 seedling growth on four soils in the Alberta foothills. *Can. J. For. Res.* 18:75-84.
- 23 Curtis, J.T. 1959. *The vegetation of Wisconsin: An ordination of plant communities.*
24 University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, WI. 388 p.
- 25 Erdman, G.G., Peterson, R.M., and R.O. Oberg. 1985. Crown releasing of red maple

- 1 poles to shorten high-quality sawlog rotations. *Can. J. For. Res.* 15:694-700.
- 2 Froehlich, H.A., Azevedo, J., Cafferata, P., and D. Lysne. 1980. Predicting soil
3 compaction on forested land. Forest Engineering Department, Oregon State
4 University, Corvallis, OR. 120 p.
- 5 Greene, D.F., Zasada, J.C., Sirois, L., Kneeshaw, D., Morin, H., Charron, I., and M.J.
6 Simard. 1999. A review of the regeneration dynamics of North American boreal
7 forest tree species. *Can. J. For. Res.* 29:824-839.
- 8 Grigal, D.F. 1973. Note on the hydrometer method of particle-size analysis. *Minnesota*
9 *Forestry Research Notes* 245. 4 p.
- 10 Hibbs, D.E. 1982. Gap dynamics in a hemlock-hardwood forest. *Can. J. For. Res.*
11 12:522-527.
- 12 Host, G.E., Pregitzer, K.S., Ramm, C.W., Hart, J.B., and D.T. Cleland. 1987. Landform-
13 mediated differences in successional pathways among upland forest ecosystems in
14 northwestern lower Michigan. *For. Sci.* 33:445-457.
- 15 Howard, A.F. 1996. Damage to residual trees from cable yarding when partial cutting
16 second-growth stands in coastal British Columbia. *Can. J. For. Res.* 26(8):1392-
17 1396.
- 18 Johnson, C.E., Romanowicz, R.B., and T.G. Siccama. 1997. Conservation of
19 exchangeable cations after clear-cutting of a northern hardwood forest. *Can. J.*
20 *For. Res.* 27:859-868.
- 21 Kneeshaw, D.D., and Y. Bergeron. 1996. Ecological factors affecting the abundance of
22 advance regeneration in Quebec's south-western boreal forest. *Can. J. For. Res.*
23 26:888-898.
- 24 Kobe, R.K., Pacala, S.W., and J.A. Silander Jr. 1995. Juvenile tree survivorship as a
25 component of shade tolerance. *Ecol. Appl.* 5(2):517-532.

- 1 Kochenderfer, J.N. 1977. Area in skidroads, truck roads, and landings in the central
2 Appalachians. *J. For.* 75:507-508.
- 3 Koger, J.L., Burt, E.C., and A.C. Trouser. 1984. Skidder tire size vs. soil compaction in
4 soil bins. *Trans. ASAE* 27:665-669.
- 5 Larsen, D.R., Metzger, M.A., and P.S. Johnson. 1997. Oak regeneration and overstory
6 density in the Missouri Ozarks. *Can. J. For. Res.* 27:869-875.
- 7 Lorimer, C.G. 1980. Age structure and disturbance history of a southern Appalachian
8 virgin forest. *Ecology* 61(5):1169-1184.
- 9 Lorimer, C.G. 1984. Development of the red maple understory in northeastern oak
10 forests. *For. Sci.* 30:3-22.
- 11 Mace, A.C.Jr. 1971. Effect of mechanized harvesting on the forest: Soil and water
12 aspects. P. 5-13 in *Proceedings of the conference on biological and economic*
13 *considerations in mechanized timber harvesting.* Misc. Rep. 116. University of
14 Minnesota, College of Forestry, St. Paul, MN.
- 15 Marks, P.L. 1975. On the relation between extension growth and successional status of
16 deciduous trees of the northeastern United States. *Bulletin of the Torrey*
17 *Botanical Club* 102:172-177.
- 18 Marquis, D.A. 1965. Regeneration of birch and associated hardwoods after patch
19 cutting. *USDA For. Res. Pap. NE-32.* 13 p.
- 20 Marquis, D.A. 1967. Clearcutting in northern hardwoods: Results after 30 years. *USDA*
21 *For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-85.* 13 p.
- 22 Marquis, D.A. 1969. Thinning in young northern hardwoods - 5 year results. *USDA*
23 *For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-170.* 22 p.
- 24 McClure, J.W., and T.D. Lee. 1993. Small-scale disturbance in a northern hardwoods
25 forest: effects on tree species abundance and distribution. *Can. J. For. Res.*

- 1 23(7):1347-1360.
- 2 Miles, P.D., Chen, C.M., and E.C. Leatherberry. 1995. Minnesota Forest Statistics,
3 1990, revised. USDA For. Serv. Res. Bull. NC-158. 138 p.
- 4 Miller, G.W. 1997. Stand dynamics in 60-year-old Allegheny hardwoods after thinning.
5 Can. J. For. Res. 27(10):1645-1657.
- 6 Minckler, L.S., and J.D. Woerheide. 1965. Reproduction of hardwoods 10 years after
7 clearcutting as affected by site and opening size. J. For. 63:103-107.
- 8 Moehring, D. M., and I. K. Rawls. 1970. Detrimental effects of wet weather logging. J.
9 For. 68:166-167.
- 10 Mueller-Dombois, P., and H. Ellenburg. 1974. Aims and methods of vegetation ecology.
11 John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY. 547 p.
- 12 Myers, C.C., and R.G. Buchman. 1988. Silvicultural opportunities ten years after
13 clearcutting central hardwoods. North. J. Appl. For. 5(1):22-25.
- 14 Navratil, S. 1991. Regeneration challenges. P. 15-27 *in* Aspen Management in the 21st
15 Century. Proceedings of a symposium. Navratil S., and P.B. Capman, (eds.).
16 Forestry Canada Northwest Region, Northern Forestry Centre, and Poplar Council
17 of Canada, Edmonton, Alberta.
- 18 Nyland, R.D. 1986. Important trends and regional differences in silvicultural practice
19 for northern hardwoods. P. 156-182. *in* The northern hardwood resource:
20 management and potential. Mich. Tech. Univ., Houghton, MI.
- 21 Nyland, R.D., Behrend, D.F., Craul, P.J., and H.E. Echelberger. 1977. Effects of logging
22 in northern hardwood forests. Tappi 60(6):58-61.
- 23 O'Hara, K.L. 1986. Development patterns of residual oaks and oak and yellow-poplar
24 regeneration after release in upland hardwood stands. South. J. Appl. For.
25 10:244-248.

1. Palik, B.J., and K.S. Pregitzer. 1992. The age and height structure of red maple (*Acer rubrum*) populations in northern Michigan bigtooth aspen (*Populus grandidentata*) forests. *Can. J. For. Res.* 22(10):1449-1462.
- 4 Phillips, D.L., and D.J. Shure. 1990. Patch-size effects on early succession in southern Appalachian forests. *Ecology* 71(1):204-212.
- 6 Reisinger, T.W., and P.E. Pope. 1991. Impact of timber harvesting on residual trees in a central hardwood forest in Indiana. P. 82-91 in *Proceedings of 8th Central Hardwood Forest Conference*, McCormick, L.H., and K.W. Gottschalk (eds.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-148.
- 10 Reisinger, T.W., Simmons, G.L., and P.E. Pope. 1988. The impact of timber harvesting on soil properties and seedling growth in the south. *South. J. Appl. For.* 12(1):58-67.
- 13 Ruark, G.A., Mader, D.L., and T.A. Tattar. 1982. The influence of soil compaction and aeration on the root growth and vigour of trees -a literature review. I. *Arboricultural Journal* 6(4):251-265.
- 16 Runkle, J.R. 1991. Gap dynamics of old-growth eastern forests: management implications. *Natural Areas Journal* 11(1):19-25.
- 18 SAS Institute Inc. 1996. *JMP start statistics. Version 3.1.6.2.* Duxbury Press, Belmont, Calif. 522 p.
- 20 Schier, G.A., Shepperd W.D., and J.R Jones. 1985. Regeneration. P. 197-208 in *Aspen: Ecology and Management in the Western United States*, DeByle, N.V., and Winokur, R.P. (eds.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-119.
- 23 Shepperd, W.D. 1993. The effect of harvesting activities on soil compaction, root damage, and suckering in Colorado aspen. *West. J. Appl. For.* 8(2):62-66.
- 25 Shetron, S.G., Sturos, J.A., Padley, E., and C. Trettin. 1988. Forest soil compaction: effect of multiple passes and loadings on wheel track surface soil bulk density.

- 1 North. J. Appl. For. 5(2):120-123.
- 2 Smidt, M.F., and K.J. Puettmann. 1998. Overstory and understory competition affect
3 underplanted eastern white pine. For. Ecol. Manage. 105(1-3):137-150.
- 4 Sokal, R.R., and F.J. Rohlf. 1995. Biometry: the principles and practice of statistics in
5 biological research. 3rd ed. W. H. Freeman and Company, New York, NY. 887 p.
- 6 Stone, D.M., and J.D. Elioff. 1998. Soil properties and aspen development five years
7 after compaction and forest floor removal. Can. J. Soil Sci. 78:51-58.
- 8 Strong, T.F., and G.G. Erdmann. 2000. Effects of residual stand density on growth and
9 volume production in even-aged red maple stands. Can. J. For. Res. 30:372-378.
- 10 Tift, B.D., and M.A. Fajvan. 1999. Red maple dynamics in Appalachian hardwood
11 stands in West Virginia. Can. J. For. Res. 29:157-165.
- 12 Tubbs, C.H. 1977. Manager's guide for northern hardwoods in the North Central States.
13 U. S. For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-39. 29 p.
- 14 Vora, R.S. 1988. Potential soil compaction forty years after logging in Northeastern
15 California. Great Basin Naturalist 48(1):117-120.
- 16 Walters, M.B., and P.B. Reich. 1996. Are shade tolerance, survival, and growth rate
17 linked? Effects of low light and nitrogen on hardwood seedlings. Ecology
18 77:841-853.
- 19 Walters, M.B., and P.B. Reich. 1997. Growth of *Acer saccharum* seedlings in deeply
20 shaded understories of northern Wisconsin: effects of nitrogen and water
21 availability. Can. J. For. Res. 27:237-247.
- 22 Walters, R.S., and R.D. Nyland. 1989. Clearcutting central New York northern
23 hardwood stands. North. J. Appl. For. 6(2):75-78.
- 24 Wang, Z., and R.D. Nyland. 1993. Tree species richness increased by clearcutting of
25 northern hardwoods in central New York. For. Ecol. Manage. 57:71-84.

- 1 Wang, Z., and R.D. Nyland. 1996. Changes in the condition and species composition of
2 developing even-aged northern hardwood stands in central New York. *North. J.*
3 *Appl. For.* 13(4):189-194.
- 4 Ward, J.S., and G.R. Stephens. 1999. Influence of cutting methods on 12-year-old
5 hardwood regeneration in Connecticut. P. 204-207 *in* Proceedings, 12th central
6 hardwood forest conference, Stringer, J.W., and D.L. Loftis (eds.). USDA For.
7 Serv. Gen Tech. Rep. SRS-24.
- 8 Yorks, T.E., and S. Dabydeen. 1999. Seasonal and successional understory vascular
9 plant diversity in second-growth hardwood clearcuts of western Maryland, USA.
10 *For. Ecol. Manage.* 119(1-3):217-240.
- 11 Zasada, Z.A., and J.C. Tappeiner. 1969. Soil disturbance from rubber-tire skidders
12 during summer harvesting of aspen. *Minnesota Forestry Research Notes* 204. 3 p.
13

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Chapter 4

**Residual forest canopy and soil disturbance influence
tree regeneration in Northern Hardwood stands**

1 **Abstract**

2

3 Impacts of clearcutting and partial harvest operation in northern hardwood stands
4 were examined at 15 study sites in northern Minnesota. In each stand, tree regeneration
5 and advance regeneration composition, residual overstory, and soil compaction were
6 determined on landings, skid trails and areas off skid trails in the summers of 1997 and
7 1998, 4 to 8 years after harvest. Leaving more residual basal area was associated with
8 lower soil compaction, and resulted in shade tolerant species composing a larger
9 proportion of the regeneration. My results show the importance of understanding
10 complex interactions between pre-harvest and post-harvest conditions, harvesting
11 disturbance, and soil properties as they determine future stand composition and
12 productivity.

13

14 **Additional Key Words:**

15

16 Northern hardwoods, tree regeneration, shade tolerance, residual forest canopy,
17 forest soil compaction, advance regeneration

18

19

1 **Introduction**

2

3 Silvicultural systems attempt to modify stand characteristics by controlling stand
4 density and composition of post harvest vegetation. Forests of the Great Lakes region,
5 specifically of Minnesota, provide opportunities to investigate vegetation responses to
6 disturbance patterns and management objectives aimed at modifying stand
7 characteristics. Since the timber industry expansion of the 1830's to 1900's, studies have
8 shown increasing areas of northern hardwood forests in Minnesota, with shifts in species
9 composition resulting mainly from human-induced disturbance regimes (Widmann and
10 Schmidt 1997). Research and management objectives for northern hardwood forests
11 typically include harvests along the entire gradient of overstory removal, from single tree
12 selection to clearcutting. Over the last four decades, hardwood managers and researchers
13 have increased application of even-aged practices to enhance options for harvesting
14 efficiency, stand maintenance, compositional shifts, and multiple use factors (Tubbs
15 1977).

16

17 The majority of northern hardwood forests contain long-lived tree species that
18 regenerate prolifically by seed and vegetatively from stump sprouts (Tubbs 1977).
19 Hardwood species (excluding aspen) comprise roughly one-third of Minnesota's
20 timberland with most of these stands located in the central and southeastern sections of
21 the state growing on sandy and silt loams (Miles et al. 1995). Main species composing
22 Minnesota's northern hardwood component include sugar maple, basswood, northern red
23 oak, red maple, paper birch, yellow birch, green ash, black ash, and ironwood (Table 2).

24

25 In a forest understory, light may be the single most important limiting factor
26 determining initiation and growth of tree seedlings (Canham 1988, Kobe et al. 1995,
27 Walters and Reich 1996, Walters and Reich 1997). Timber harvesting and its associated
28 removal of overstory create gaps in the canopy that allow increased levels of light to
29 reach the forest understory and differentially influence trees and other plant species
30 according to their shade tolerance. Species experience a trade-off in their competitive
31 abilities; shade tolerant species generally grow more slowly and efficiently in low light

1 where intolerants may die of suppression (Canham 1985, 1989, Kobe et al. 1995). In the
2 absence of major disturbance, tolerant species eventually replace intolerant species, while
3 intolerant species are able to dominate exposed areas (e. g., Kobe et al. 1995, Marks
4 1975, Runkle 1991, Hibbs 1982, Canham and Marks 1985). These mechanistic
5 differences in shade tolerance largely drive forest succession (Barnes et al. 1998, Walters
6 and Reich 1997).

8 **Harvesting Impacts on Northern Hardwood Stands**

9
10 The degree of site disturbance a harvest regime creates depends on several factors
11 including the level of overstory removal, damage to advance regeneration and residuals,
12 skid trail layout, and season of harvest. Partial harvests may result in increased diameter
13 growth of the residual trees (Marquis and Ernst 1991, Miller 1997), and diameter growth
14 of tolerant seedlings may be improved more so than that of intolerant seedlings (Marquis
15 1969, Greene et al. 1999, Allen and Marquis 1970, Miller 1997, Minckler and Woerheide
16 1965). Other studies show enhanced understory tree seedling survival and growth under
17 low levels of residual basal area, more so for intolerant and intermediate species (Myers
18 and Buchman 1988, Walters and Nyland 1989). Even in clearcut stands that were
19 dominated by tolerant species, composition may shift to favor early successional,
20 intolerant species (Canham 1985, Canham 1989, Kobe et al. 1995). Conversely, high
21 densities of residual overstory may shade and inhibit regeneration of desired intolerant
22 species (e.g., Kobe et al. 1995, Marks 1975, Runkle 1981, Canham and Marks 1985).

23
24 During phases with limited or no disturbance, northern hardwoods rely on seed as
25 a means of regeneration. However, after a disturbance such as harvesting, seed dispersal
26 from residuals, soil seed bank, and advance reproduction contribute to the makeup of the
27 future stands. In addition, after death of overstory trees or advance regeneration,
28 sprouting can become a dominant mode of regeneration (Johnson et al. 1997, Larsen et
29 al. 1997). Harvesting operations also reduce survival of advance regeneration and
30 residual overstory trees by direct harvest damage (Bragg et al. 1994, Howard 1996,
31 Reisinger and Pope 1991) or altered growing conditions (Tucker and Emmingham 1976).

1 Despite variations in tree regeneration response to overstory removal according to shade
2 tolerance, regeneration of northern hardwood species decreases with severe soil
3 compaction (Moehring and Rawls 1970, Nyland et al. 1977, Kochenderfer 1977).

4 Alternatively, species that regenerate best on exposed mineral soil, such as birch species,
5 can be favored by soil disturbance. For example, Marquis (1965) found higher densities
6 of paper and yellow birch in disturbed, skid trail areas of exposed mineral soil as
7 compared to adjacent, non-skid trail areas.

8
9 Harvesting machinery traffic creates a skid trail system and results in soil
10 compaction that may influence tree regeneration. Impacts of soil compaction are
11 sometimes difficult to separate from influences of open canopy conditions, because these
12 two variables are correlated. For example, landings are usually heavily compacted and
13 have no residual canopy cover while other portions of the stand may have endured less
14 harvesting activity, resulting in higher residual canopy cover and lower soil compaction.
15 These factors may result in significantly fewer seedlings and sprouts on compacted areas
16 such as skid trails, compared to less compacted areas (Nyland et al. 1977, Moehring and
17 Rawls 1970, Ruark et al. 1982). Another confounding factor influencing regeneration is
18 season of harvest. There is less soil disturbance and compaction when soils are frozen
19 (Mace 1971). Lower soil compaction and greater belowground carbon storage may also
20 influence seasonal variation in sprouting response of hardwood trees. Chapters one and
21 two cover these and other related issues in greater depth; they can also be applied to
22 northern hardwood regeneration.

23
24 Although modifying density through overstory removal influences future
25 regeneration of forest stands, the negative effects of associated site disturbance can also
26 influence vegetation response to harvest regimes. This paper investigates the response of
27 northern hardwood forests to different harvesting operations by quantifying the
28 interacting effects of overstory competition and altered seedling environment and soil
29 compaction on future stand composition. The first hypotheses tested that soil compaction
30 levels on skid trails and landings are greater than in areas away from skid trails
31 (Hypothesis 1a), and that summer harvests result in higher soil compaction levels than

1 winter harvests (Hypothesis 1b). The second hypothesis tested that the proportions of
2 shade tolerant versus shade intolerant species shift between areas away from skid trails,
3 and areas on skid trails and landings. The third hypotheses tested that the interacting
4 effects of increased soil compaction and increased residual basal area negatively
5 influence both tolerant and intolerant regeneration (Hypothesis 3a); and that the effects of
6 increased residual basal area are positively correlated with intolerant advance
7 regeneration and negatively correlated with tolerant advance regeneration (Hypothesis
8 3b).

10 **Methods**

12 *Study Area and Site Selection*

14 This study encompasses 15 northern hardwood forest stands in five counties of
15 northeastern Minnesota (Figure 1, Table 1). These stands were clearcut or partially
16 harvested between 1990 and 1994. I examined impacts of forest practices in the summers
17 of 1997 and 1998, four to eight growing seasons after harvest. Study sites have an
18 average slope of eight percent. The overall mean annual temperature for the study region
19 ranges from 3.8 to 5.6° C (39-42° F), and the overall mean annual precipitation ranges
20 from 66 to 76 cm (26-30 inches) (Anderson et al. 1996). The study sites exist mainly on
21 till parent materials (Anderson et al. 1996). Field data collection methods described in
22 Chapter 2 provided soil texture, indicating that all study sites are located on similar
23 classes of sandy loams and silt loams.

25 Sites were selected to assure a range of treatment conditions, but fairly
26 homogeneous within-site characteristics and sites covered a gradient of overstory
27 removal, from hardwood clearcuts (0 m²/ha of residual basal area) to single tree
28 hardwood thinnings (26 m²/ha of residual basal area) (Figure 1). Sites were only selected
29 if there were no recent major disturbances or management practices since the harvest.

1 *Study Site Properties*

2
3 I obtained timber sale maps from the United States Forest Service, Minnesota
4 Department of Natural Resources and several counties in northern Minnesota, from
5 which I then chose target locations for subsequent field measurements. Sites investigated
6 in this study comprised an average area of 10.3 ha, ranging from 2 to 15.8 ha and had an
7 average 50 year site index of 18 m taken from the dominant tree species (Table 1); and
8 regeneration age ranged from 4 to 8 years, with a mean of 6 years. I attempted to keep
9 site quality and other site characteristics constant across study sites. Analyses showed
10 that time since harvest, site index, and soil texture differences between study sites were
11 not a significant contribution in any of the models tested ($p < 0.05$).

12
13 Sugar maple, northern red oak, and basswood were the most common of the 25
14 species of residual trees encountered on hardwood study sites, and composed 84 percent
15 of the overstory residual basal area. Red maple, yellow birch, and white birch composed
16 10 percent of the residuals. The remaining residuals were small components of trembling
17 aspen, bigtooth aspen, green ash, and black ash. Sugar maple and paper birch composed
18 62 percent of the regeneration tree vegetation, with northern red oak, ironwood, and red
19 maple comprising 19 percent. Sugar maple and northern red oak composed 60 percent of
20 the advance regeneration tree species, along with smaller components of red maple,
21 trembling aspen, basswood, paper birch, and bigtooth aspen comprising 31 percent.
22 These definitions of regeneration and advance regeneration vegetation are defined in
23 greater detail in the next section. Species composition according to study site did not
24 differ significantly along a gradient of residual overstory basal area, but did suggest
25 differential patterns in regeneration and advance regeneration composition (Table 1).

26
27
28

1 ***Field Collection and Description of Data***

2

3 ***Forest Soil***

4

5 As an indicator of soil compaction I measured the penetration resistance of the
6 soil matrix using an Eijkelkamp soil cone penetrometer (Bennie and Burger 1988).

7 Resistance to penetration (kPa) was measured in each regeneration plot up to a 15 cm soil
8 depth (ASAE 1990). Force exerted on the penetrometer equaled a uniform rate of
9 approximately 30 mm/sec or slower, and readings were taken at the moment when the
10 cone reached a 15 cm soil depth. A 1 cm² base area cone was used on all but 2 study
11 sites. Penetrometer measurements for the two study sites on which a 2 cm² base area
12 cone was used were then converted by the following formula:

$$\text{Cone resistance} = \frac{\text{gauge reading}}{\text{base area of cone (cm}^2\text{)}}$$

13

14 A minimum of ten randomly selected samples per plot was measured. The
15 measurements on a given study site were taken within the same day to ensure that soil
16 moisture conditions were relatively uniform for an entire site. Readings were ignored
17 when it was obvious that the penetrometer hit a rock or a log, and those readings were not
18 recorded. Although the mean and median penetrometer values for each regeneration plot
19 were correlated by an r^2 value of 0.99, I used the median value to minimize effects of
20 insignificant outlying values.

21

22 Ten texture samples were taken from five randomly located points within each
23 study site. For each point, one sample was taken from the 0-25 cm profile, and one
24 sample was taken from the 26-50 cm profile. Texture analysis was conducted in the lab
25 in fall 1998/winter 1999 using a modified hydrometer method (Grigal 1973)

26

27

28

29

1 *Forest Vegetation*

2

3 On each study site I placed five, 60 m² (0.006 ha) relevé plots, employing the
4 method described in Mueller-Dombois and Ellenburg (1974). Excluding any bladed
5 areas or log piles, one square (7.75 x 7.75 m) relevé was placed on or adjacent to the
6 landing site ("L" plots) to represent the highest disturbance in the stand associated with
7 the lowest levels of residual basal area. Two rectangular (3 x 20 m) relevés were placed
8 within skid trails ("S" plots), representing intermediate disturbance residual basal areas,
9 and two square relevés were placed away from ("A" plots) any landings or skid trails,
10 representing areas of the lowest disturbance and highest levels of residual basal area
11 (Figure 2). All plots were a minimum of 20 meters apart.

12

13 To quantify composition of tree regeneration, I separated tree composition into
14 two height strata; "regeneration" or understory (0 - 2 m) and "advance regeneration" or
15 midstory (2 - 10 m). Tree species composition was quantified by making cover estimates
16 by species for all trees located within the relevé in the two separate height strata using the
17 following cover class codes: (1) 1% (single occurrence), (2) <5% (occasional), (3) <5%
18 (plentiful), (4) 5-25%, (5) 25-50%, (6) 50-75%, and (7) 75-100%. For analysis purposes
19 I designated percent cover as the median value of each cover class. It was possible for a
20 single height stratum to contain >100 percent cover due to overlapping layers of
21 vegetation. Therefore, I transformed the data to establish an upper bound value on
22 percent cover. The highest percent cover value in a single height stratum became 100%,
23 and the remaining percent cover values were divided by the absolute highest percent
24 cover value.

25

26 Tree species were divided into two categories: shade tolerant and shade intolerant
27 species (Table 2). Tree species were designated as "tolerant" if Burns and Honkala
28 (1990) define them to be very tolerant to midtolerant. "Intolerant" tree species were
29 designated as such, if Burns and Honkala (1990) considered them very intolerant to
30 slightly midtolerant (i.e. *Pinus strobus* L. and *Betula alleghaniensis* Britton).

31

1 Residuals were defined as those trees left standing after harvest with a minimum
2 DBH of 18 cm. I measured residual overstory basal area from the center of each relevé
3 plot using a 1-meter factor prism. Residual trees considered "in" were recorded and
4 separated by tree species, considered separately from any regeneration or advance
5 regeneration trees.

6

7 *Data Analysis*

8

9 I conducted all statistical analyses using JMP 3.1.6.2 (SAS Institute Inc. 1996).
10 Unless otherwise noted, relationships were considered significant if $p \leq 0.05$. In order to
11 conduct these statistical analyses, I transformed the percent cover data to meet
12 assumptions made in ANOVA and regression analysis by using the arc sine square-root
13 transformation to stabilize variance (Sabin and Stafford 1990).

14

15 To quantify impacts of harvesting on soil compaction (Hypothesis 1a), I used one-
16 way ANOVA to compare median compaction values between L, S, and A plots with the
17 Tukey-Kramer HSD procedure (since samples sizes were unequal) (Sokal and Rohlf
18 1995). I also used the Tukey-Kramer HSD procedure to compare absolute mean
19 compaction values between summer and winter harvested sites (Hypothesis 1b).

20

21 To quantify the different levels of percent regeneration cover according to shade
22 tolerance classes (Hypothesis 2), I used one-way ANOVA to compare cover values
23 between L, S, and A plots with the Tukey-Kramer HSD (meeting the same assumptions
24 as described for Hypotheses 1a and 1b).

25

26 I investigated the effects of residual overstory and soil compaction and their
27 interactions on regeneration (Hypothesis 3a) and advance regeneration (Hypothesis 3b)
28 composition by fitting regression models. These regression models predicted percent
29 composition as a function of residual basal area, median soil compaction, and residual
30 basal area times median soil compaction and testing the parameters for significance
31 ($p > 0.10$). I used analysis of covariance to determine whether these relationships differed

1 between shade tolerance classes of the regeneration and advance regeneration. The full
2 models contained indicator variables for shade tolerance on the intercept and slope
3 parameters while reduced models only included indicator variables on either the slope,
4 the intercept, or neither.

5

6 **Results**

7

8 *Compaction Levels and Timing of Harvest*

9

10 Median penetrometer values ranged from 800 to 7,000 kPa. Penetrometer
11 readings on landings and skid trails ranged from 800 to 7,000 kPa, and ranged from 800
12 to 4,200 kPa in areas away from skid trails. Landings contained greater, but non-
13 significantly different, median compaction values ($2,642 \pm 325.1$ kPa) than skid trails
14 ($2,066 \pm 229.9$ kPa). Compaction levels on landings and skid trails were significantly
15 greater than in areas away from skid trails ($1,546 \pm 233.8$ kPa). Median compaction
16 values were greater for study sites harvested in summer versus winter, but the differences
17 were not significant at $p = 0.05$.

18

19 *Harvesting Intensity and Regeneration Tree Composition*

20

21 Overstory residual basal areas ranged from 0 to 26 m²/ha and were significantly
22 greater in areas away from skid trails (18 ± 1.4 m²/ha) than on skid trails (13 ± 1.4 m²/ha)
23 and landings (9 ± 2.0 m²/ha). Percent cover of tolerant tree regeneration was greater
24 away from skid trails (46 ± 6.4) than on skid trails (45 ± 6.3), and lowest on landings (37
25 ± 8.9). Percent cover of intolerant tree regeneration was greater on landings (30 ± 3.7)
26 than on skid trails (22 ± 2.6), and away from skid trails (14 ± 2.7).

27

28

29

30

31

1 *Interactive Effects of Residual Basal Area and Soil Compaction on Regeneration and*
 2 *Advance Regeneration Tree Species Composition*

3
 4 Higher residual basal area was negatively associated with soil compaction (Figure
 5 3). In general, residual basal area was negatively associated with intolerant regeneration
 6 composition, positively associated with tolerant regeneration composition, and varied in
 7 the magnitude of its effects with soil compaction. With a full model containing median
 8 compaction (COMP), residual basal area (BA) and their interaction (COMP*BA), using a
 9 dummy variable for shade tolerance (ST = 0 for shade intolerant and ST = 1 for shade
 10 tolerant) on the intercept and all parameters (COMP, BA, and COMP*BA) as
 11 independent variables was significant (Table 3). However, with a full model containing
 12 COMP, BA, ST, and their interactions (COMP*BA, COMP*ST, BA*ST, and
 13 COMP*BA*ST), using a dummy variable for season of harvest (SH = 0 for winter and
 14 SH = 1 for summer) on the intercept and all parameters (COMP, BA, ST, COMP*BA,
 15 COMP*ST, BA*ST, and COMP*BA*ST) apparently was overspecified and was not
 16 significant. Investigating these variables individually or in combination as independent
 17 variables indicated that the model with the highest fit, including only significant
 18 parameters was equation 1:

19
 20 [1] Percent regeneration cover = 14.8% + (0.006 kPa)COMP -
 21 (0.0002)BA*COMP + (20.8)ST + (1.4)ST*BA - (0.01)ST*COMP

22
 23 Although results for advance regeneration responses have not been presented thus
 24 far, residual basal area negatively correlated with intolerant advance regeneration and
 25 positively correlated with tolerant advance regeneration. Soil compaction had no
 26 significant correlation with advance regeneration. A full model containing residual basal
 27 area (BA), using a dummy variable for shade tolerance (ST = 0 for shade intolerant and
 28 ST = 1 for shade tolerant) on the intercept, and BA parameter as independent variables
 29 was significant (Table 4). A full model containing BA, ST, and their interaction
 30 (BA*ST), using a dummy variable for season of harvest (SH = 0 for winter and SH = 1
 31 for summer) on the intercept and all parameters (BA, ST, and BA*ST) as independent

1 variables was overspecified and not significant. Investigating these variables individually
2 or in combination as independent variables indicated that the model with the highest fit,
3 was equation 2:

4

5 [2] Percent advance regeneration cover = 24.7% - 0.6 m²/ha (BA) - 9.54(ST) +
6 2.8 m²/ha (BA*ST)

7

8 **Discussion**

9

10 My results support earlier findings that areas impacted by harvesting machinery
11 will have higher soil compaction levels than areas not trafficked by harvesting machinery
12 (Hatchell et al. 1970, Martin 1988). Even though I do not have exact numbers, it is safe
13 to assume that landings and skid trails received the majority of harvesting traffic, and
14 consequently these areas showed the highest levels of soil compaction (Froehlich et al.
15 1980, Koger et al. 1984). While winter logging on frozen soil has been found to result in
16 less site disturbance because surface and subsurface effects of soil compaction are
17 minimized (Mace et al. 1971) I could not detect a difference in compaction levels. This
18 may be due to my limited sample size and the degree of variation in other factors. It also
19 may be possible that harvests taking place during winter months did not actually occur on
20 frozen soil, so harvesting machinery may have impacted the site and soil to the same
21 magnitude as on summer harvested sites.

22

23 One question from my study arises: do the differences between soil compaction
24 on skid trails versus away from skid trails make a difference in future stand conditions?
25 Stone and Elioff (1998) found significantly greater bulk density values still five years
26 after treatment, and Vora (1988) found greater compaction levels on skid trails 40 years
27 after harvest. Since I am still finding significant differences up to 8 years after harvest, I
28 assume that harvesting effects on soil compaction on landings and skid trails could persist
29 throughout most of a rotation. Chapter 2 investigates this issue in greater depth for aspen
30 forests, and can likewise be applied to northern hardwood forests as in this study.
31 Despite the freeze-thaw cycles a northern climate forest endures (Marion 1995), soil

1 amelioration may not have taken place as of yet, and reasons for that are discussed further
2 in Chapter 2.

3

4 I found differences in composition (in terms of proportion of shade tolerant and
5 shade intolerant species) of the tree regeneration between landings, skid trails and areas
6 off the skid trails. This effect has been documented and is usually been attributed mainly
7 to the increased resource availability for seedlings after more intensive harvesting
8 operations. For example, species community structure has been shown to shift along
9 gradients of gap size (McClure and Lee 1993) depending on the disturbance and
10 competitive strategies of pre- and post-harvest vegetation. Phillips and Shure (1990)
11 found tree species richness to increase along a gradient of increasing gap size. Tree
12 species of Minnesota's northern hardwood forest ecosystem display these variations in
13 shade tolerance, and in turn respond differently to gradients of overstory release (Canham
14 1985, Canham 1989, Kobe et al. 1995, Marks 1975, Runkle 1981, Hibbs 1982, Canham
15 and Marks 1985).

16

17 Differences in composition may also be due to different responses to higher soil
18 compaction on skid trails and landings. Reduction in tree growth in compacted areas has
19 been well documented (Chapter two, Bates et al. 1990, Navratil 1991, Schier et al. 1985,
20 Shepperd 1993, Zasada and Tappeiner 1969). These studies and my results indicated that
21 despite differences in species response to residual overstory basal area levels and other
22 site-disturbance related factors, severe soil compaction may be significantly deleterious
23 to tree regeneration.

24

25 My results showed that composition of regeneration is related to the interactions
26 of soil compaction and residual basal area. Areas with higher soil compaction and greater
27 overstory removal represented the more disturbed areas of a harvested site. These more
28 disturbed areas therefore encouraged growth of early successional species, which are able
29 to invade disturbed sites and are usually shade intolerant species (e.g., Barnes et al. 1998,
30 Walters and Reich 1996, and Beck and Hooper 1986). Alternatively, especially in stands
31 with advance regeneration, lack of heavy harvesting disturbance encouraged later

1 successional, shade tolerant species. This phenomenon is also evident in the shift of
2 species composition for the advance regeneration layer along the gradient of harvesting
3 intensity (Béland and Bergeron 1993, Kneeshaw and Bergeron 1996).

4
5 The presence of advance regeneration four to eight years after harvest may
6 indicate that it can play an important role in determining future stand composition of
7 northern hardwood forests. In denser stands, shade tolerant species will dominate
8 advance regeneration; and in areas without heavy harvesting disturbance, special
9 management consideration (e.g., felling or herbicide application) may be required to shift
10 the species composition. Alternatively, clearcutting regimes may alter growing
11 conditions too quickly for shade tolerant seedlings. Clearcutting may not provide enough
12 shade and temperature protection which may result in mortality of advance, shade
13 tolerant species, allowing early successional, shade intolerant species to become
14 established (e.g., Bjorkbom and Walters 1986, Walters and Nyland 1989, Greene et al.
15 1999, Larsen et al. 1997).

16
17 Another influence on tree regeneration in northern hardwood stands may be the
18 level of competing herbaceous and other woody vegetation. Highly disturbed areas often
19 provide good habitat for shrubs such as *Rubus* spp. to dominate, often outcompeting
20 regenerating trees and/or preventing seed germination (Yorks and Dabydeen 1999, Smidt
21 and Puettmann 1998). Future investigations are needed to quantify interacting effects of
22 competing vegetation, overstory basal area, soil compaction, and tree species shade
23 tolerance.

24 25 **Conclusions**

26
27 This study investigated the effects of harvesting regimes on 15 northern hardwood
28 stands of northern Minnesota, and set out to determine the significant factors affecting
29 tree composition on those study sites. Analyses revealed the significant interaction
30 effects between increased soil compaction, range in residual basal area, tree species shade
31 tolerances, and composition of regeneration and advance regeneration. Management

1 objectives focused on obtaining "desired" or high quality tree species, must consider their
2 shade tolerance and how they respond to overstory removal and soil compaction. As the
3 level of soil compaction increases, percent cover of tolerant regeneration decreases

4

5

6

Species	Light	Harsh	Low	High	Low	High
1	1	2	3	4	5	6
2	1	2	3	4	5	6
3	1	2	3	4	5	6
4	1	2	3	4	5	6
5	1	2	3	4	5	6
6	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	1	2	3	4	5	6
8	1	2	3	4	5	6
9	1	2	3	4	5	6
10	1	2	3	4	5	6
11	1	2	3	4	5	6
12	1	2	3	4	5	6
13	1	2	3	4	5	6
14	1	2	3	4	5	6
15	1	2	3	4	5	6
16	1	2	3	4	5	6
17	1	2	3	4	5	6
18	1	2	3	4	5	6
19	1	2	3	4	5	6
20	1	2	3	4	5	6
21	1	2	3	4	5	6
22	1	2	3	4	5	6
23	1	2	3	4	5	6
24	1	2	3	4	5	6
25	1	2	3	4	5	6
26	1	2	3	4	5	6
27	1	2	3	4	5	6
28	1	2	3	4	5	6
29	1	2	3	4	5	6
30	1	2	3	4	5	6
31	1	2	3	4	5	6
32	1	2	3	4	5	6
33	1	2	3	4	5	6
34	1	2	3	4	5	6
35	1	2	3	4	5	6
36	1	2	3	4	5	6
37	1	2	3	4	5	6
38	1	2	3	4	5	6
39	1	2	3	4	5	6
40	1	2	3	4	5	6
41	1	2	3	4	5	6
42	1	2	3	4	5	6
43	1	2	3	4	5	6
44	1	2	3	4	5	6
45	1	2	3	4	5	6
46	1	2	3	4	5	6
47	1	2	3	4	5	6
48	1	2	3	4	5	6
49	1	2	3	4	5	6
50	1	2	3	4	5	6
51	1	2	3	4	5	6
52	1	2	3	4	5	6
53	1	2	3	4	5	6
54	1	2	3	4	5	6
55	1	2	3	4	5	6
56	1	2	3	4	5	6
57	1	2	3	4	5	6
58	1	2	3	4	5	6
59	1	2	3	4	5	6
60	1	2	3	4	5	6
61	1	2	3	4	5	6
62	1	2	3	4	5	6
63	1	2	3	4	5	6
64	1	2	3	4	5	6
65	1	2	3	4	5	6
66	1	2	3	4	5	6
67	1	2	3	4	5	6
68	1	2	3	4	5	6
69	1	2	3	4	5	6
70	1	2	3	4	5	6
71	1	2	3	4	5	6
72	1	2	3	4	5	6
73	1	2	3	4	5	6
74	1	2	3	4	5	6
75	1	2	3	4	5	6
76	1	2	3	4	5	6
77	1	2	3	4	5	6
78	1	2	3	4	5	6
79	1	2	3	4	5	6
80	1	2	3	4	5	6
81	1	2	3	4	5	6
82	1	2	3	4	5	6
83	1	2	3	4	5	6
84	1	2	3	4	5	6
85	1	2	3	4	5	6
86	1	2	3	4	5	6
87	1	2	3	4	5	6
88	1	2	3	4	5	6
89	1	2	3	4	5	6
90	1	2	3	4	5	6
91	1	2	3	4	5	6
92	1	2	3	4	5	6
93	1	2	3	4	5	6
94	1	2	3	4	5	6
95	1	2	3	4	5	6
96	1	2	3	4	5	6
97	1	2	3	4	5	6
98	1	2	3	4	5	6
99	1	2	3	4	5	6
100	1	2	3	4	5	6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

- 1 **Table 1.** Study site properties for northern hardwood stands investigated in northeastern
 2 Minnesota. Order of northern hardwood sites corresponds to their level of residual
 3 overstory basal area. Dominant tree species are given in general for sites with low,
 4 intermediate, and high residual overstory basal areas.

Mean Basal Area (m ² /ha) of Residuals	Years Since Harvest	Season of Harvest ^a	Site Index	Dominant Regeneration Tree Species ^b	Dominant Advance Regen Tree Species ^b	Dominant Overstory Tree Species ^b
0	8	W	23	paper birch(29%),	paper birch (29%)	sugar maple (50%)
0	4	W	17	sugar maple (26%)	quaking aspen (29%)	basswood (28%)
3.7	7	S	15		bigtooth aspen (19%)	
4.0	6	W	15			
6.1	4	S	15			
10.9	6	S	17	sugar maple (43%)	sugar maple (30%)	n. red oak (37%)
14.7	5	W	19	ironwood (15%)	n. red oak (23%)	sugar maple (24%)
16.4	6	S	21		red maple (15%)	basswood (14%)
17.5	6	W	20			
18.8	7	W	22			
20.3	4	S	20	sugar maple (70%)	sugar maple (65%)	sugar maple (49%)
21.7	5	W	18		n. red oak (12%)	basswood (20%)
21.7	5	W	22			n. red oak (20%)
23.0	5	W	19			
26.0	8	W	17			

^a Season of Harvest: W=winter, S=summer

^b By percent cover

1 **Table 2.** Tree species and their shade tolerances. Species investigated on northern
 2 hardwood study sites of Minnesota to study regeneration and advance regeneration
 3 responses to soil disturbance and residual overstory basal area.

4

Scientific name ^a	common name	Shade Tolerance ^b
<i>Tilia americana</i> L.	American basswood	tolerant
<i>Ulmus americana</i> L.	American elm	tolerant
<i>Abies balsamea</i> (L.) Mill.	balsam fir	tolerant
<i>Populus balsamifera</i> L.	balsam poplar	intolerant
<i>Populus grandidentata</i> Michx.	bigtooth aspen	intolerant
<i>Fraxinus nigra</i> Marsh.	black ash	intolerant
<i>Prunus serotina</i> Ehrh.	black cherry	intolerant
<i>Picea mariana</i> (Mill.) B.S.P.	black spruce	tolerant
<i>Quercus macrocarpa</i> Michx.	bur oak	tolerant
<i>Juglans cinerea</i> L.	butternut	intolerant
<i>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</i> Marsh.	green ash	tolerant
<i>Ostrya virginiana</i> (Miller) K. Koch.	ironwood	tolerant
<i>Quercus rubra</i> L.	northern red oak	tolerant
<i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L.	northern white cedar	tolerant
<i>Betula papyrifera</i> Marsh.	paper birch	intolerant
<i>Populus tremuloides</i> Michx.	quaking aspen	intolerant
<i>Acer rubrum</i> L.	red maple	tolerant
<i>Pinus resinosa</i> Ait.	red pine	intolerant
<i>Ulmus thomasi</i> Sarg.	rock elm	tolerant
<i>Acer saccharum</i> Marsh.	sugar maple	tolerant
<i>Larix laricina</i> (DuRoi) K. Koch	tamarack	intolerant
<i>Quercus alba</i> L.	white oak	tolerant
<i>Pinus strobus</i> L.	eastern white pine	intolerant
<i>Picea glauca</i> (Moench) Voss	white spruce	tolerant
<i>Betula alleghaniensis</i> Britton	yellow birch	intolerant

^a based on Gleason and Cronquist (1991) (see further explanation in text)

^b based on Burns and Honkala (1990)

5

6

1 **Table 3.** Regression parameters and statistics for describing full and reduced models in
 2 the investigation of Hypothesis 3 a: The effects of soil compaction and residual basal area
 3 interact with species shade tolerance to significantly influence the percent cover of
 4 northern hardwood regeneration.

Independent variable	Dependent variable: transformed percent cover		
	Full Model	Reduced Model	Reduced Model (Eq. 1)
	<i>Regression coefficients (B_j) and statistics</i>		
Intercept	1.06	12.26	14.8
COMP	0.008	0.006	0.006
BA	0.3	0.1	-
ST	35.0	20.2	20.8
SH	28.5	-	-
COMP*BA	-0.0002	-0.0002	-0.0002
COMP*ST	-0.01	-0.008	-0.01
BA*ST	1.16	1.6	1.4
COMP*SH	-0.007	-	-
BA*SH	-0.4	-	-
ST*SH	-26.1	-	-
COMP*BA*ST	-0.0001	-0.0002	-
COMP*BA*SH	-0.00002	-	-
COMP*ST*SH	0.002	-	-
BA*ST*SH	-0.12	-	-
COMP*BA*ST*SH	0.0002	-	-
R ² Adjusted	0.295	0.307	0.312
P-value	0.01	<0.0001	<0.0001

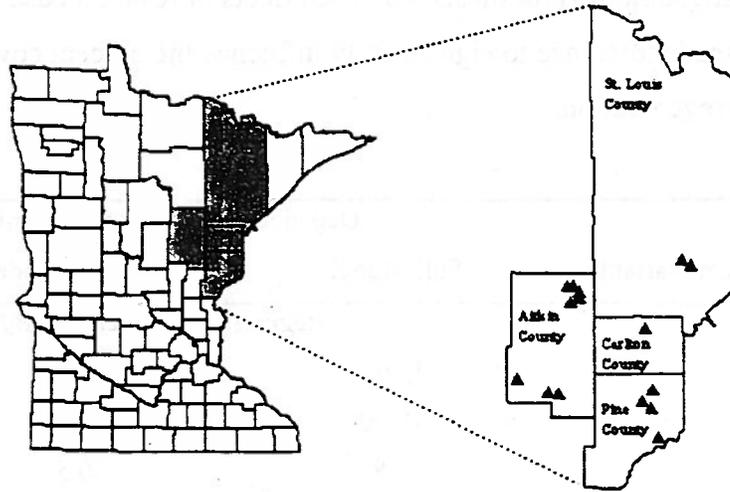
6

1 **Table 4.** Regression parameters and statistics for describing full and reduced models in
 2 the investigation of Hypothesis 3 b: The effects of residual basal area interact with
 3 species shade tolerance to significantly influence the percent cover of northern hardwood
 4 advance regeneration.
 5

Independent variable	Dependent variable: transformed percent cover		
	Full Model	Reduced Model	Reduced Model (Eq. 2)
	<i>Regression coefficients (B_j) and statistics</i>		
Intercept	37.0	30.7	24.7
COMP	-0.003	-0.002	-
BA	-0.8	-0.5	-0.6
ST	-8.5	-3.7	9.54
SH	-9.8	-	-
COMP*BA	-0.0001	-0.0001	-
COMP*ST	-0.001	-0.002	-
BA*ST	2.9	2.4	2.8
COMP*SH	-0.002	-	-
BA*SH	0.8	-	-
ST*SH	16.9	-	-
COMP*BA*ST	-0.0001	0.0002	-
COMP*BA*SH	0.00004	-	-
COMP*ST*SH	-0.005	-	-
BA*ST*SH	-1.5	-	-
COMP*BA*ST*SH	0.0007	-	-
R ² Adjusted	0.465	0.479	0.476
P-value	<0.0001	<0.0001	<0.0001

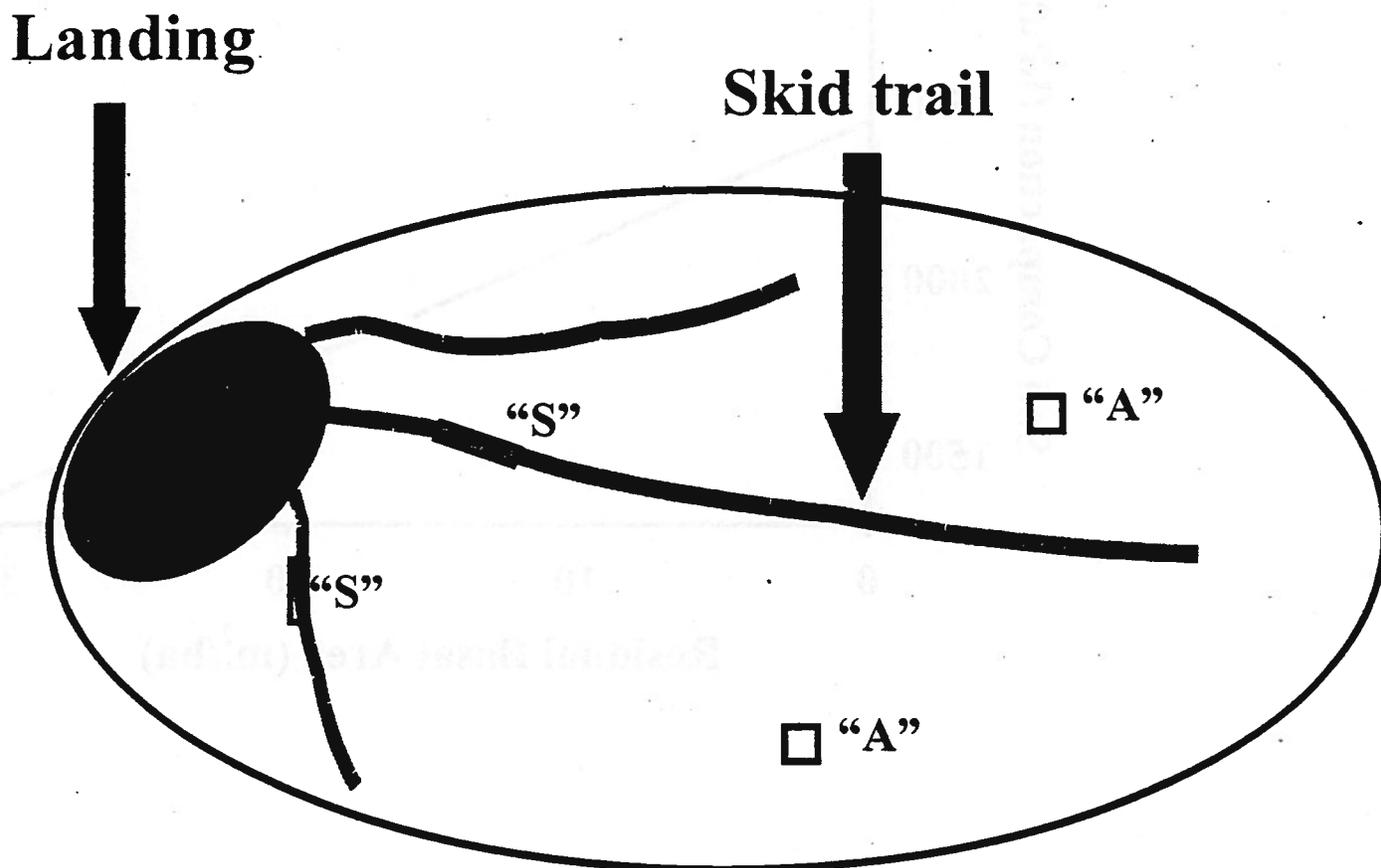
6

1 **Figure 1.** Northern hardwood study site locations in Minnesota.



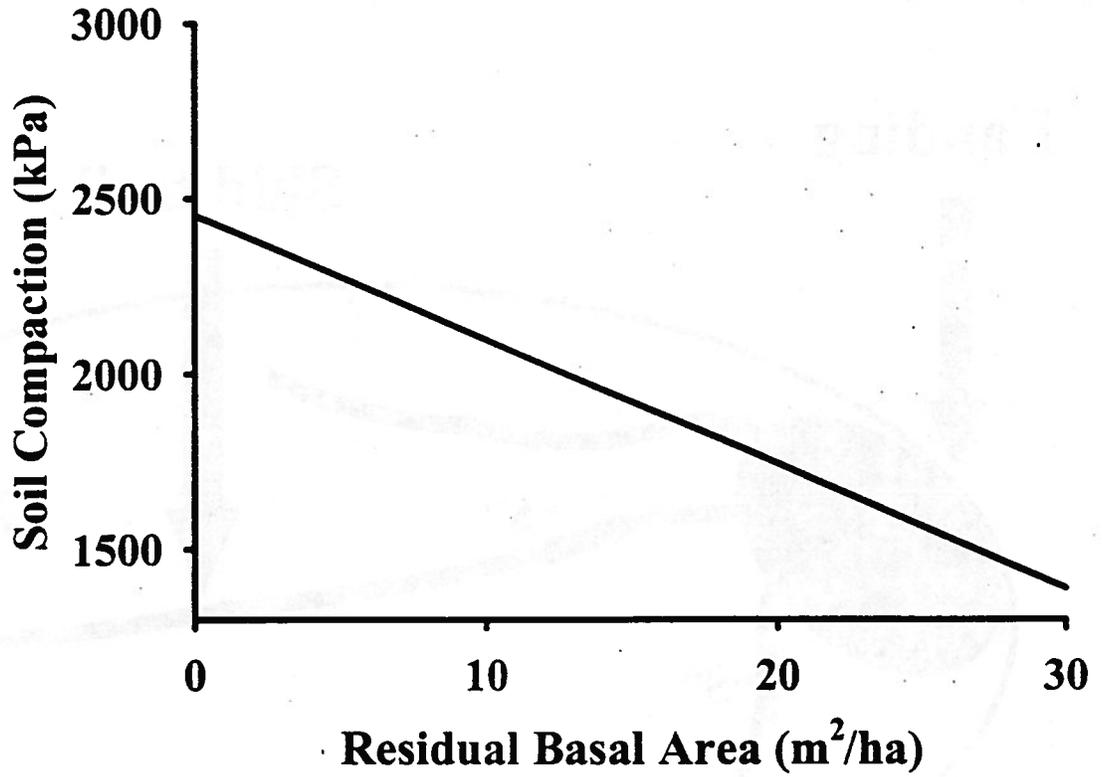
2

- 1 **Figure 2.** Field collection methods to investigate tree species composition according to
- 2 percent cover. Relevé plots were placed within each study site. One "L" plot was placed
- 3 in or adjacent to the landing, two "S" plots were placed within skid trails, and two "A"
- 4 plots were placed away from skid trails and landings. Data were collected to quantify
- 5 regeneration, advance regeneration, residual basal area, and soil compaction.
- 6



1 **Figure 3.** Residual basal area (m^2/ha) versus soil compaction (kPa). Sites investigated
2 were hardwood partial harvests and clearcuts in northeastern Minnesota.

3
4
5



Chapter Four Reference List

- 1
2
- 3 Ahlgren, C.E., and I.F. Ahlgren. 1983. The human impact on Northern forest
4 ecosystems. P. 33-51 in *The Great Lakes Forest: An environmental and social*
5 *history*. Flader, S.L. (ed.). University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, MN.
- 6 Allen, R.H., and D.A. Marquis. 1970. Effect of thinning on height and diameter growth
7 of oak and yellow-poplar saplings. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-173. 11 p.
- 8 American Society of Agricultural Engineers (ASAE). 1990. Soil cone penetrometer.
9 ASAE Standards S313.2:567.
- 10 Andersen, J.L., Grigal, D.F., and T.H. Cooper. 1996. Soils and landscapes of Minnesota.
11 University of Minnesota: Minnesota Extension Service, St. Paul, MN. 8 p.
- 12 Barnes, B.V., Zak, D.R., Denton, S.R., and S.H. Spurr. 1998. *Forest Ecology*. 4th ed.
13 John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New York, NY. 774 p.
- 14 Bates, P.C., Blinn, C.R., and A.A. Alm. 1990. A survey of the harvesting histories of
15 some poorly regenerated aspen stands in northern Minnesota. P. 221-230 in
16 *Proceedings of 1989 Aspen Symposium*. Adams, R.D. (ed.). USDA For. Serv.
17 Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-140.
- 18 Beck, D.E., and R.M. Hooper. 1986. Development of a southern Appalachian hardwood
19 stand after clearcutting. *South. J. Appl. For.* 10:168-172.
- 20 Béland, M., and Y. Bergeron. 1993. Ecological factors affecting abundance of
21 commercial species advance growth in jack pine (*Pinus banksiana* Lamb.) stands
22 of the boreal forest of north-western Quebec. *For. Chron.* 69:561-568.
- 23 Bennie, A.T.P., and R. duT. Burger. 1988. Penetration resistance of fine sandy apedal
24 soils as affected by relative bulk density, water content, and texture. *S. Afr. J.*
25 *Plant Soil* 5(1):5-10.
- 26 Bjorkbom, J.C., and R.S. Walters. 1986. Allegheny hardwood regeneration response to

- 1 even-age harvesting methods. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-581.
- 2 Bragg, W.C., Ostrofsky, W.D., and B F. Hoffman Jr. 1994. Residual tree damage
3 estimates from partial cutting simulation. *Forest Products Journal* 44(7/8):19-22.
- 4 Burns, R.M., and Honkala, B.H. 1990. *Silvics of North America: Volume 2, Hardwoods.*
5 US Dept. Agric. For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 654.
- 6 Canham, C.D. 1985. Suppression and release during canopy recruitment in *Acer*
7 *saccharum*. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 112:134-145.
- 8 Canham, C D. 1988. Growth and canopy architecture of shade tolerant trees: response to
9 canopy gaps. *Ecology* 69(3):786-795.
- 10 Canham, C.D. 1989. Different responses to gaps among shade-tolerant tree species.
11 *Ecology* 70(3):548-550.
- 12 Canham, C.D. and P. L. Marks. 1985. The response of woody plants to disturbance:
13 patterns of establishment and growth. P. 197-216 in *The ecology of natural*
14 *disturbance and patch dynamics*, Pickett, T.A., and P. White (eds.). Academic
15 Press, Orlando, FL.
- 16 Clatterbuck, W.K., Blackley, P., and P. Yielding. 1999. Development of oak
17 regeneration nine years after shelterwood cutting and clearcutting on the coastal
18 plain of west Tennessee. P. 189-194 in *Proceedings, 12th central hardwood forest*
19 *conference*, Stringer, J.W., and D.L. Loftis (eds.). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech.
20 *Rep. SRS-24.*
- 21 Curtis, J.T. 1959. *The vegetation of Wisconsin: An ordination of plant communities.*
22 University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, WI. 388 p.
- 23 Erdman, G.G., Peterson, R.M., and R.O. Oberg. 1985. Crown releasing of red maple
24 poles to shorten high-quality sawlog rotations. *Can. J. For. Res.* 15:694-700.
- 25 Froehlich, H.A., Azevedo, J., Cafferata, P., and D. Lysne. 1980. Predicting soil

- 1 compaction on forested land. Forest Engineering Department, Oregon State
2 University, Corvallis, OR. 120 p.
- 3 Gleason, H.A., and A. Cronquist. 1991. Manual of vascular plants of northeastern
4 United States and adjacent Canada. 2nd ed. New York Botanical Garden, Bronx,
5 NY. 910 p.
- 6 Greene, D.F., Zasada, J.C., Sirois, L., Kneeshaw, D., Morin, H., Charron, I., and M.J.
7 Simard. 1999. A review of the regeneration dynamics of North American boreal
8 forest tree species. *Can. J. For. Res.* 29:824-839.
- 9 Grigal, D.F. 1973. Note on the hydrometer method of particle-size analysis. *Minnesota*
10 *Forestry Research Notes* 245. 4 p.
- 11 Hatchell, G.E., Ralston, C.W., and R.R. Foil. 1970. Soil disturbances in logging. *J. For.*
12 68(12):772-775.
- 13 Hibbs, D.E. 1982. Gap dynamics in a hemlock-hardwood forest. *Can. J. For. Res.*
14 12:522-527.
- 15 Host, G.E., Pregitzer, K.S., Ramm, C.W., Hart, J.B., and D.T. Cleland. 1987. Landform-
16 mediated differences in successional pathways among upland forest ecosystems in
17 northwestern lower Michigan. *For. Sci.* 33:445-457.
- 18 Howard, A.F. 1996. Damage to residual trees from cable yarding when partial cutting
19 second-growth stands in coastal British Columbia. *Can. J. For. Res.* 26(8):1392-
20 1396.
- 21 Johnson, C.E., Romanowicz, R.B., and T.G. Siccama. 1997. Conservation of
22 exchangeable cations after clear-cutting of a northern hardwood forest. *Can. J.*
23 *For. Res.* 27:859-868.
- 24 Kneeshaw, D.D., and Y. Bergeron. 1996. Ecological factors affecting the abundance of
25 advance regeneration in Quebec's south-western boreal forest. *Can. J. For. Res.*
26 26:888-898.

- 1 Kobe, R.K., Pacala, S.W., and J.A. Silander Jr. 1995. Juvenile tree survivorship as a
2 component of shade tolerance. *Ecol. Appl.* 5(2):517-532.
- 3 Kochenderfer, J.N. 1977. Area in skidroads, truck roads, and landings in the central
4 Appalachians. *J. For.* 75:507-508.
- 5 Koger, J.L., Burt, E.C., and A.C. Trowse Jr. 1984. Skidder tire size vs. soil compaction
6 in soil bins. *Trans. ASAE* 27:665-669.
- 7 Larsen, D.R., Metzger, M.A., and P.S. Johnson. 1997. Oak regeneration and overstory
8 density in the Missouri Ozarks. *Can. J. For. Res.* 27:869-875.
- 9 Lorimer, C.G. 1980. Age structure and disturbance history of a southern Appalachian
10 virgin forest. *Ecology* 61(5):1169-1184.
- 11 Lorimer, C.G. 1984. Development of the red maple understory in northeastern oak
12 forests. *For. Sci.* 30:3-22.
- 13 Mace, A.C.Jr. 1971. Effect of mechanized harvesting on the forest: Soil and water
14 aspects. P. 5-13 *in* Proceedings of the conference on biological and economic
15 considerations in mechanized timber harvesting. Misc. Rep. 116. University of
16 Minnesota, College of Forestry, St. Paul, MN.
- 17 Marks, P.L. 1975. On the relation between extension growth and successional status of
18 deciduous trees of the northeastern United States. *Bulletin of the Torrey*
19 *Botanical Club* 102:172-177.
- 20 Marquis, D.A. 1965. Regeneration of birch and associated hardwoods after patch
21 cutting. *USDA For. Res. Pap. NE-32.* 13 p.
- 22 Marquis, D.A. 1967. Clearcutting in northern hardwoods: Results after 30 years. *USDA*
23 *For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-85.* 13 p.
- 24 Marquis, D.A. 1969. Thinning in young northern hardwoods - 5 year results. *USDA*
25 *For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-170.* 22 p.

- 1 Marquis, D.A. 1982. Effect of advance seedling size and vigor on survival after
2 clearcutting. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-498. 7 p.
- 3 Marquis, D.A., and R.L. Ernst. 1991. The effects of stand structure after thinning on the
4 growth of an Allegheny hardwood stand. For. Sci. 37:1182-1200.
- 5 Martin, C.W. 1988. Soil disturbance by logging in New England - review and
6 management recommendations. North. J. Appl. For. 5(1):30-34.
- 7 McClure, J.W., and T.D. Lee. 1993. Small-scale disturbance in a northern hardwoods
8 forest: effects on tree species abundance and distribution. Can. J. For. Res.
9 23(7):1347-1360.
- 10 Miles, P.D., Chen, C.M., and E.C. Leatherberry. 1995. Minnesota Forest Statistics,
11 1990, revised. USDA For. Serv. Res. Bull. NC-158. 138 p.
- 12 Miller, G.W. 1997. Stand dynamics in 60-year-old Allegheny hardwoods after thinning.
13 Can. J. For. Res. 27(10):1645-1657.
- 14 Minckler, L.S., and J.D. Woerheide. 1965. Reproduction of hardwoods 10 years after
15 clearcutting as affected by site and opening size. J. For. 63:103-107.
- 16 Moehring, D.M., and I.K. Rawls. 1970. Detrimental effects of wet weather logging. J.
17 For. 68:166-167.
- 18 Mueller-Dombois, P., and H. Ellenburg. 1974. Aims and methods of vegetation ecology.
19 John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY. 547 p.
- 20 Myers, C.C., and R.G. Buchman. 1988. Silvicultural opportunities ten years after
21 clearcutting central hardwoods. North. J. Appl. For. 5(1):22-25.
- 22 Navratil, S. 1991. Regeneration challenges. P. 15-27 *in* Aspen Management in the 21st
23 Century. Proceedings of a symposium. Navratil S., and P.B. Capman, (eds.).
24 Forestry Canada Northwest Region, Northern Forestry Centre, and Poplar Council
25 of Canada, Edmonton, Alberta.

- 1 Nyland, R.D., Behrend, D.F., Craul, P.J., and H.E. Echelberger. 1977. Effects of logging
2 in northern hardwood forests. *Tappi* 60(6):58-61.
- 3 O'Hara, K.L. 1986. Development patterns of residual oaks and oak and yellow-poplar
4 regeneration after release in upland hardwood stands. *South. J. Appl. For.* 10:244-
5 288.
- 6 Palik, B.J., and K.S. Pregitzer. 1992. The age and height structure of red maple (*Acer*
7 *rubrum*) populations in northern Michigan bigtooth aspen (*Populus*
8 *grandidentata*) forests. *Can. J. For. Res.* 22(10):1449-1462.
- 9 Phillips, D.L., and D.J. Shure. 1990. Patch-size effects on early succession in southern
10 Appalachian forests. *Ecology* 71(1):204-212.
- 11 Reisinger, T.W., and P.E. Pope. 1991. Impact of timber harvesting on residual trees in a
12 central hardwood forest in Indiana. P. 82-91 *in* Proceedings of 8th Central
13 Hardwood Forest Conference, McCormick, L.H., and K.W. Gottschalk (eds.).
14 USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-148.
- 15 Ruark, G.A., Mader, D.L., and T.A. Tattar. 1982. The influence of soil compaction and
16 aeration on the root growth and vigour of trees -a literature review. I.
17 *Arboricultural Journal* 6(4):251-265.
- 18 Runkle, J.R. 1991. Gap dynamics of old-growth eastern forests: management
19 implications. *Natural Areas Journal* 11(1):19-25.
- 20 Sabin, T.E., and S.G. Stafford. 1990. Assessing the need for transformation of response
21 variables. Forest Research Laboratory, Oregon State University, Corvallis.
22 Special Pub. 20. 31 p.
- 23 Schier, G.A., Shepperd W.D., and J.R Jones. 1985. Regeneration. P. 197-208 *in* *Aspen:*
24 *Ecology and Management in the Western United States*, DeByle, N.V., and
25 Winokur, R.P. (eds). USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-119.
- 26 Shepperd, W.D. 1993. The effect of harvesting activities on soil compaction, root

- 1 damage, and suckering in Colorado aspen. *West. J. Appl. For.* 8(2):62-66.
- 2 Shetron, S.G., Sturos, J.A., Padley, E., and C. Trettin. 1988. Forest soil compaction:
3 effect of multiple passes and loadings on wheel track surface soil bulk density.
4 *North. J. Appl. For.* 5(2):120-123.
- 5 Smidt, M.F., and K.J. Puettmann. 1998. Overstory and understory competition affect
6 underplanted eastern white pine. *For. Ecol. Manage.* 105(1-3):137-150.
- 7 Sokal, R.R., and F.J. Rohlf. 1995. *Biometry: the principles and practice of statistics in*
8 *biological research.* 3rd ed. W. H. Freeman and Company, New York, NY. 887
9 p.
- 10 Stone, D.M., and J.D. Elioff. 1998. Soil properties and aspen development five years
11 after compaction and forest floor removal. *Can. J. Soil Sci.* 78:51-58.
- 12 Strong, T.F., and G.G. Erdmann. 2000. Effects of residual stand density on growth and
13 volume production in even-aged red maple stands. *Can. J. For. Res.* 30:372-378.
- 14 Tift, B.D., and M.A. Fajvan. 1999. Red maple dynamics in Appalachian hardwood
15 stands in West Virginia. *Can. J. For. Res.* 29:157-165.
- 16 Tubbs, C.H. 1977. *Manager's guide for northern hardwoods in the North Central States.*
17 U. S. For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-39. 29 p.
- 18 Vora, R.S. 1988. Potential soil compaction forty years after logging in Northeastern
19 California. *Great Basin Naturalist* 48(1):117-120.
- 20 Walters, M.B., and P.B. Reich. 1996. Are shade tolerance, survival, and growth rate
21 linked? Effects of low light and nitrogen on hardwood seedlings. *Ecology*
22 77:841-853.
- 23 Walters, M.B., and P.B. Reich. 1997. Growth of *Acer saccharum* seedlings in deeply
24 shaded understories of northern Wisconsin: effects of nitrogen and water
25 availability. *Can. J. For. Res.* 27:237-247.

- 1 Walters, R.S., and R.D. Nyland. 1989. Clearcutting central New York northern
2 hardwood stands. *North. J. Appl. For.* 6(2):75-78.
- 3 Wang, Z., and R.D. Nyland. 1993. Tree species richness increased by clearcutting of
4 northern hardwoods in central New York. *For. Ecol. Manage.* 57:71-84.
- 5 Wang, Z., and R.D. Nyland. 1996. Changes in the condition and species composition of
6 developing even-aged northern hardwood stands in central New York. *North. J.*
7 *Appl. For.* 13(4):189-194.
- 8 Ward, J.S., and G.R. Stephens. 1999. Influence of cutting methods on 12-year-old
9 hardwood regeneration in Connecticut. P. 204-207 *in* Proceedings, 12th central
10 hardwood forest conference, Stringer, J.W., and D.L. Loftis (eds.). USDA For.
11 Serv. Gen Tech. Rep. SRS-24.
- 12 Widmann, R.H., and T.L. Schmidt. 1997. Trends in hardwood timber resources for the
13 northern states. P. 76-88 *in* Proceedings 11th Central Hardwood Forest
14 Conference, Pallardy, S.G., Cecich, R.A., Garrett, H.G., and P.S. Johnson (eds.).
15 USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-188.
- 16 Yorks, T.E., and S. Dabydeen. 1999. Seasonal and successional understory vascular
17 plant diversity in second-growth hardwood clearcuts of western Maryland, USA.
18 *For. Ecol. Manage.* 119(1-3):217-240.
- 19 Zasada, Z.A., and J.C. Tappeiner. 1969. Soil disturbance from rubber-tire skidders
20 during summer harvesting of aspen. *Minnesota Forestry Research Notes* 204. 3 p.

**HARVESTING IMPACTS ON SPECIES DIVERSITY AND COMPOSITION IN NORTHERN
ASPEN FORESTS: THE INFLUENCE OF HARVEST SEASON AND WITHIN-SITE
DISTURBANCE PATTERNS**

ALAINA L. BERGER

Department of Forest Resources, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota 55108 USA

KLAUS J. PUETTMANN

Department of Forest Science, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon 97331

GEORGE E. HOST

Natural Resources Research Institute, University of Minnesota, Duluth, Minnesota 55811

Background

The trembling aspen ecosystem covers around 5 million acres in Minnesota (Jaakko Pöyry Consulting Inc. 1992) and is an important source for fiber and high quality sawtimber. The Generic Environmental Impact Statement study predicted intensive management of this covertype in the future (Jaakko Pöyry Consulting Inc. 1992). A better understanding of impacts from such intensive management is necessary as greater emphasis is being placed on balancing multiple uses of the forest *e.g.* recreation, timber production and maintenance of biodiversity (Franklin et al. 1989, Edwards and Abivardi 1998).

Impacts of harvesting on sustainability of forests can be described by the stability (i.e. resistance to change) and the resiliency (i.e. rate at which a community returns to its initial state) (Halpern 1988). It has been difficult to generalize the relationship between biodiversity and ecosystem processes such as productivity (Cardinale et al. 2000) but it is generally accepted that increased biodiversity in a system provides a buffer against fluctuations in the environment, which may be important in the maintenance of long term stability of the ecosystem processes (Loreau 2000, Schwartz et al. 2000).

Disturbance as a primary factor influencing diversity and floristic composition in forested systems has been under great scrutiny (Grace 1999, Roberts and Gilliam 1995). In general terms, disturbance through modification of environmental factors such as heat, moisture and wind together with the availability of propagules, harvesting impacts to soils, and animal life, determine the response of the vegetation to the harvesting activities. Various approaches are useful in describing the patterns of

vegetation in response to disturbance; most commonly using the regeneration niche (Grubb 1977) in combination with the colonization strategies and life history attributes for the component species (Bazzaz 1996, Grime 1979). For example, aspen has a specific regeneration niche, which consists of a lack of dominant shoot (e.g., removed by harvesting operation), high light conditions, and warm soils, and in combination with its colonization strategy of root suckering, aspen can be viewed as a pioneering species. The composite flora in an aspen dominated ecosystem contains a complex arrangement of pioneering, generalist and interior forest species, each using a combination of strategies. Interior forest species more sensitive to disturbance generally rely heavily on vegetative reproduction through rhizomes or vegetative propagules (Lezberg et al. 1999), while generalists can rely on a combination of root, seedlings and seed and or bud banks (Haeussler et al. 1990). Competitive relationships between interior forest herbs, shrubs and more ruderal species can be very site specific and dependent upon the temporal and spatial patterns created within each site (Collins et al. 1985). Whether or not the presence of a species remains constant, increases or decreases in response to disturbance depends not only on the strategies mentioned above but on the interaction of these strategies with the intensity and duration of the disturbance (Denslow 1985, Grace 1999).

Trembling aspen (*Populus tremuloides* Michx.) is a shade intolerant species (Baker 1949) and naturally regenerates through suckering after large scale disturbances that remove most or all of the overstory (Perala 1990). It is most commonly harvested by clearcutting because this method improves regeneration conditions for aspen by complete removal of the overstory (Perala 1977, Schier et al. 1985). Disturbances, such as clearcutting, usually assure that aspen regenerates, but may not act at an appropriate scale (temporally or spatially) to allow for the persistence or stability of associated understory species (Connell and Sousa 1983). The intensity of harvesting varies by site and the associated conditions thus creating variability in the disturbance gradient. For example, the effects of harvesting on soil properties and regeneration differ by season of the year (Bates 1990, Smidt 1996). Winter harvesting generally has less impact on soil properties than summer harvesting. With a deep snow pack and frozen soil, the forest floor and surface soil change little during harvesting. Snow properties may change during harvest and this may help to protect the soil (Zasada et al. 1987). However, winter logging can result in damage to soils if the snow depth is not adequate and/or soils do not freeze. A particularly sensitive time is late winter when the snow is melting and surface soil becomes saturated with water. Many studies have investigated the effects of logging on soil disturbance during the snow-free period. Three types of disturbances associated with harvesting are soil compaction, rutting, and scarification (Bates 1990). Soil compaction has been shown to limit root growth of a variety of tree species (Ruark et al. 1982) and reduced the amount and growth of quaking aspen suckers (Alban et al. 1994). Several authors note the

absence or lower density of aspen suckers on skid trails and landings (Zasada and Tappeiner 1969, Schier et al. 1985, Shepperd 1993, Bates 1990). Logging disturbance and compaction also affect overall plant species composition. For example, exotic plants can invade on skid trails and compacted areas affecting regeneration and growth of tree regeneration and other native plants (Alban et al. 1994). Ruts or depressions are created when tires break through the forest floor into the mineral soil. Rutting can lead to direct injuries to root systems (Shepperd, 1993). Scarification is the exposure of mineral soil by displacing the organic matter. Large-scale scarification can result in lower site quality and reduced future productivity (Tuttle et al. 1985). High intensity mechanical site preparation such as trenching and plowing resulted in an increased abundance of non-native species within a sub-boreal coniferous forest of central British Columbia (Haeussler et al. 1999). Small scale scarification and mixing of organic matter often improve regeneration conditions by improving seedbed conditions for a variety of species.

Our study is a retrospective exploration of harvesting impacts on understory vegetation *i.e.*, the gradient of disturbance as represented by soil compaction and overstory removal within the aspen coevertype in northern Minnesota. Specifically we characterize the disturbance gradient of different treatments by considering the timing of harvest, soil properties, and overstory composition.

Our objective was to test following hypotheses:

- 1) Whether compaction levels on aspen sites differ between areas with high, intermediate and low disturbance and vary with season of harvest (summer vs. winter).
- 2) Whether understory species composition will be influenced by the harvesting impact or level of disturbance (*i.e.*, landings, skid trails, and off skid trails) and whether this influence differs between sites harvested in summer vs. winter.

Methods

Study sites

Sites used in this study were selected from the quaking aspen coevertype. Major species of the aspen coevertype in Minnesota are quaking aspen (*Populus tremuloides* Michx.), bigtooth aspen (*Populus grandidentata* Michx.) and balsam poplar (*Populus balsamifera* L.). Associated species of the aspen coevertype include balsam fir (*Abies balsamea* (L.) Mill.), black spruce (*Picea mariana* (Miller) BSP.), paper birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh.), sugar and red maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh., *A. rubrum* L.), northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.) and basswood (*Tilia americana* L.). Less common associates

include American elm (*Ulmus americana* L.), and black and green ash (*Fraxinus nigra* Marsh. and *F. pensylvanica* Marsh.). The region has a temperate climate with mean monthly temperatures ranging from -18 to 17° C and a mean annual temperature of 1.6° C. Average annual snowfall is about 380 cm. Average seasonal precipitation ranges from 144 mm in winter to 122 mm in the summer. Soils for this region are derived from till plains, outwash and moraines laid down by glacial advances (Anderson et al. 1996).

A total of 19 sites, that were clearcut between 1988 and 1994, were selected from timber sales in 6 counties northeastern Minnesota, resulting in an average age of 6 years for the study period. Average residual basal area remaining ranged from ≤ 1 m²/ha to 9 ± 6.5 m²/ha (4 to 39 ft²/acre). Detailed information regarding the site conditions (broken down by disturbance categories) are presented in Table 1. Sites were chosen to avoid other types of disturbance due to human activity as well as natural disturbances such as windthrow or insect outbreak. Study sites ranged in size from 3 to 14 ha (\bar{x} = 9 ha or 25 acres) with an average aspen 50-year site index of 24 m (78 feet). Sale documentation and personal communication with sale administrators allowed us to split sites into groups based on season of harvest (summer vs and winter). However, it was not possible to reconstruct whether soils were actually frozen on sites harvested in winter.

Sample design

Plot layout was designed to cover the gradient of disturbance conditions created through harvesting within each site. First, harvesting patterns, i.e., network of skid trails and landings were identified and areas were labeled based on the amount of harvesting traffic they received (e.g., Figure 1). Landings (L) receive the highest amount of traffic and thus experience the maximum harvesting disturbance on a site. Skidtrails (S) receive less traffic and thus less harvesting disturbance. Areas off the landings and skid trails (O) had little to no harvesting traffic and were viewed as "controls". Vegetation plots (60 m²) were then placed randomly on areas in each of these categories (1 plot in L, 2 plots in S, 2 plots in O). On each vegetation plot, the relevé method (Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg 1974) was used to inventory all vascular plant species for the 0-2.0 m height stratum. Inventory was conducted during June through August in 1997 and 1998. Vascular plant species occurrences were recorded and each species placed in a cover class: (1) single occurrence, (2) <5% (occasional), (3) <5% (plentiful), (4) 5-25%, (5) 26-50%, (6) 51-75%, and (7) 76-100%. Median percent values were used to represent each cover class in the analysis. Nomenclature for all vascular plants follows Gleason and Cronquist (1991).

Measurements of tree regeneration and residual basal area (m^2/ha) were taken on a one 0.001 ha regeneration-overstory plot (2-m x 5-m) placed in the center of each vegetation plot (Figure 1). Diameters (mm) of all tree species > 2.54 cm diameter at breast height (DBH) were measured with a caliper or diameter tape. Residual trees were defined as those trees left standing during harvest with a minimum DBH of 18 cm. Basal area for residual trees was measured from the center of each regeneration plot using a 1-meter factor prism.

Soil compaction was characterized by measuring the resistance to penetration (kPa) of the soil matrix using a soil cone penetrometer (Bennie and Burger 1988). A minimum of ten measurements were taken to characterize compaction in the top 15 cm of the soil horizon in each vegetation plot and these data were used to calculate median soil compaction value. Soil texture to 50 cm was determined from five soil samples collected on each site using an adapted hydrometer method (Grigal 1973).

Data Treatment

Absolute soil compaction data were quite variable, likely due to the inherent differences in soil texture, soil moisture and topography between sites. To account for inherent site differences, median compaction values were standardized for each site. Soil compaction and regeneration density values for all plots were divided by the respective values found in the "O" plot with the lowest compaction value and thus "standardized" compaction and density values were calculated.

Floristic diversity was characterized by species richness (S), i.e., number of species/plot and evenness (J) (Pielou, 1975). To calculate J , first the Shannon's index of diversity (H') was calculated, using:

$$H' = - \sum (p_i \ln(p_i))$$

where p_i is the proportion of the i th species in the plot (Margurran 1988). Second J itself was calculated using:

$$J = H' / \ln(S).$$

For the ordination and classification analysis the influence of transient species within the analysis was reduced by trimming species that occurred on $< 3\%$ of all the 95 vegetation plots (Legendre and Legendre 1998).

Analysis

PCORD 3.05 (McCune and Mefford 1997) was used for ordination and classification analysis. Outlier analysis was conducted within PCORD using a cutoff of 2 standard deviations of the Euclidean Distance as well as by inspection of graphical placement of plots along ordination axes. JMP 3.1 (SAS Institute 1999) was used to perform Analysis of Variance Analysis (ANOVA). Histograms of data within disturbance categories were examined for evidence of outliers. If ANOVA results were significant, the Tukey-Kramer HSD multiple comparison of means procedure (Kramer 1956) which preserves an experiment-wise error rate of 0.05 was employed. A modified LSD test (Welch 1951) was applied when variances within groups were unequal. Throughout the analysis, the terms significant and highly significant refer to $\alpha \leq 0.05$ and $\alpha \leq 0.01$, respectively.

Soil disturbance – ANOVA and Tukey-Kramer (HSD) procedures were used to test whether areas in landings (L), skid-trails (S) and areas off skid-trail and landings (O) varied in their compaction values, and whether compaction values differed between summer and winter harvested sites.

Floristic composition - Detrended Correspondence Analysis (DCA) (Hill and Gauch 1980, Ter Braak 1995) was used to test whether grouping of plots based on understory species composition is influenced by disturbance (L, S, and O) and season of harvest (summer and winter). DCA ordination diagrams were used to judge the placement of plots along axes based on their similarity in species composition. To avoid disproportionate influence of the aspen regeneration, all species of aspen were removed from the species by plot matrix. Interpretation of variation along DCA axes was aided by constructing a second matrix with categorical variables: disturbance level (L, S, and O), and season of harvest (summer and winter).

A nonparametric classification procedure was used to test the significance of species composition within the disturbance level by season of harvest matrix. The procedure relates the plots within categorical groups to a random allocation of plots using Multi-Response Permutation Procedure (MRPP) developed by Mielke (1984). In this method, the actual within group compositional similarities (δ , i.e., within group Euclidean distance) and expected compositional similarities ($\bar{\delta}$ for all possible groupings of the plots) are compared. The test statistic (T) is then calculated as $T = (\delta - \bar{\delta}) / \mu_{\delta}$ where μ_{δ} is the standard deviation of δ under the null hypothesis (Zimmerman et al. 1985). For categorical groups determined to be significant in uniquely identifying species assemblages, Indicator Species Analysis was used to identify specific species characteristic of those groups. For this, an indicator index value (IV) is

assigned to a species based on a combination of the species relative abundance and relative frequency values. For example, the maximum IV of 100 is assigned to a species with perfect indication for a group, i.e., when all individuals of a species occur in a single group and when the species is present in every site within that group. The actual IVs are a percent of perfect indication for a group. The null hypothesis that species had no indicator value was tested using a Monte Carlo permutation technique using 1000 permutations (for more detail see Dufrene and Legendre 1997).

ANOVA and Tukey-Kramer (HSD) tests were conducted for understory species richness (S) and understory evenness (J) by disturbance level and season of harvest.

Other Factors – To investigate potential confounding factors on understory composition, ANOVA was used to compare difference between sites harvested in summer vs. winter for the following independent site variables: 1) the influence of competition from tree regeneration (standardized tpha), 2) from residual overstory (BA) and 3) soil texture (% sand).

Results

Soil compaction

Disturbance gradient – For summer and winter plots, mean levels of soil compaction (standardized) in landings and on skid trails (L and S) were essentially the same (Table 2a.). While mean levels of soil compaction for L and S plots for summer harvested sites were both significantly greater than mean standardized compaction on plots in the O disturbance category, in winter harvested sites, only the mean level of soil compaction on S plots was significantly greater than that of the O plots (Table 2a).

Season – Because of the results testing the difference between disturbance categories (Table 2a), L and S categories were combined for testing the influence of season of harvest on soil compaction. Comparison of means for the L and S categories showed a significantly higher compaction levels on summer harvested sites (Table 2b). There was no significant difference in compaction levels between summer vs winter sites for the O category (Table 2b).

Floristic composition

Disturbance – Disturbance categories were useful in identifying the major gradients in DCA for both summer and winter harvested vegetation plots. Specifically, DCA revealed that within summer sites Axis I and II explained 22% of the variation and represented the major compositional gradients. Axis II scores

seemed most related to the disturbance categories with higher scores for most of the O vegetation plots. L and S vegetation plots greatly overlap in ordination space, with lower DCA scores for Axis II revealing their similarity in plant composition. O vegetation plots appear as a distinct cloud of points only slightly overlapping the L and S vegetation plots. MRPP showed that species composition in L and S vegetation plots was not significantly different ($T = 0.34, P = 0.28$). On the other hand, vegetation in O plots was distinctly different from the “higher disturbance” plots, i.e., L and S plots combined ($T = -4.31, P < 0.004$). Similarly, DCA of winter vegetation plots revealed that Axis I and II were the major gradients, explaining 30% of the variation. Axis I scores were most related to the disturbance categories with higher scores for the L and S vegetation plots. Although in ordination space L and S vegetation plots overlap while O plots remain more distinct, MRPP was able to distinguish L vegetation from S vegetation as well as each of these from O vegetation, with each disturbance category significantly unique in vegetative composition (L vs. S, $T = -1.91, P = 0.05$; S vs O, $T = -6.77, P < 0.001$; L vs O, $T = -4.29, P = 0.001$).

Season - DCA of vegetation data from all disturbance categories combined did not show distinctly separate groups by season of harvest. Since the O category of vegetation plots had lower levels of compaction and distinctly different vegetation composition, inclusion of these plots potentially disguised the influence season of harvest had on species composition. In light of this, O vegetation plots were removed to conduct a revised ordination. The revised ordination revealed that Axis I and II explained 37 % of the variation (Fig. 2a). Summer harvested plots, while overlapping somewhat with winter harvested plots, were more tightly clustered into a distinct cloud ($\delta = 60.7$) than the winter harvested plots ($\delta = 66.1$; Fig. 2a). The distinctness of species composition by season of harvest was confirmed for L and S plots combined using MRPP ($T = -4.13, P = 0.005$). In order to assess whether this difference may be due to inherent site difference between summer and winter harvested sites, rather than a result of harvesting disturbance, an ordination of only O vegetation plots was conducted. As shown in Figure 2b, summer and winter O vegetation plots overlap along both Axis I and Axis II and reflect less coherent groups by season of harvest. While plots appeared to group slightly in ordination space, MRPP did not detect a difference in species composition by season ($T = -0.59, P = 0.24$). Also, differences in variability of species composition by season, was less distinct ($\delta = 68.7$ and $\delta = 72.5$ for summer and winter, respectively).

Species Groups - Indicative species for both summer and winter sites were identified by combining L and S plots vs. O plots, resulting in two main disturbance groups (high and low). Species that were found to be significant for identifying high vs. low disturbance groups overlapped by season of harvest (Tables 3a and 3b). Both winter and summer harvested sites revealed a compositional shift (dominance) of species

due to changes in relative frequency or relative abundance within the site or both in combination. For example, in both summer and winter sites, higher disturbance plots contained grass and invasive forb species that were not present on low disturbance plots (e.g., zero relative frequency and relative abundance for low plots, Tables 3a and 3b). Two of these species were naturalized European grasses often used in pastured systems. Interior forest species tended to decrease in dominance (e.g., *Maianthemum canadense* Desf., and *Clintonia borealis* (Aiton) Raf.), with lower relative frequency of occurrence and lower relative abundance on higher disturbance plots than on low disturbance plots). An interior forest species considered to be generalist, *Aster macrophyllus* L. while maintaining similar relative frequencies between higher and lower disturbance plots, had a lower relative abundance on higher disturbance plots (Table 3b). In comparison, a generalist shrub such as *Rubus idaeus* L. also maintained similar relative frequencies between disturbance groups but as expected of an increaser, relative abundance was greater on higher disturbance plots (Table 3a and 3b). Overall the pattern of greater dominance by increaser and invasive type species on higher disturbance plots was similar between winter and summer harvested sites. There was some indication that winter harvested sites were more inherently mesic in species composition, with species suited to moist conditions present on both high and low disturbance plots (e.g. *Scirpus cyperinus* (L.) Kunth., *Salix spp.* L., in high disturbance plots and *Botrychium virginianum* L. (Swartz), *Ulmus Americana* L. in lower disturbance plots).

Species Richness and Evenness – On summer and on winter harvested sites mean species richness was not significantly different for vegetation plots between L and S disturbance categories (Table 4a.). While both L and S plots had significantly greater mean richness than O plots in summer harvested sites, in winter harvested sites only mean richness of S plots was significantly greater than O plots (Table 4a.). Mean evenness of species for plots on both summer and winter harvested sites was not significantly different for any category of disturbance ($F_2 = 0.27, P = 0.766$; $F_2 = 1.39, P = 0.26$ for summer and winter, respectively). To assess the impact of inherent site differences between summer and winter sites, i.e., using only O vegetation plots, mean richness was significantly higher for winter harvested sites ($F_1 = 10.19, P = 0.003$) while mean evenness was not significantly different by season of harvest ($F_1 = 0.80, P = 0.38$). On the other hand, both mean richness and evenness on the higher disturbance (L and S) vegetation plots combined were significantly lower on summer-harvested sites (Table 4b).

Other Site Influences – While aspen species were excluded from the ordination matrices, effects of competition from aspen regeneration on understory plant composition were judged by their influence on low disturbance (O) plots in summer vs. winter harvested sites. O plots were chosen because they contained the highest aspen regeneration density for both summer and winter harvested sites (Table 5).

Aspen regeneration density on O plots was not significantly different by season of harvest ($F_2 = 0.81$, $P = 0.38$). At the same time mean richness was higher on winter harvested O plots, indicating that competition from aspen regeneration was not responsible for lowering diversity on summer harvested sites. Residual overstory density for both summer and winter harvested sites did not differ between disturbance categories ($F_2 = 0.17$, $P = 0.85$; $F_2 = 0.06$, $P = 0.94$, for summer and winter, respectively). Soil texture (% sand) was significantly greater for summerharvested sites ($F_2 = 17.60$, $P < 0.0001$).

Discussion

Our results are confined to the “initial effects” (sensu Halpern and Spies 1995) of harvesting disturbance such as soil compaction and removal of overstory but indicate that these initial effects through extent and timing of harvest influence not only the richness but also the composition of the vegetation. Mechanisms for shifts in diversity and composition of vegetation due to disturbance can be viewed within the context of intermediate disturbance hypothesis (Connell 1978) in addition to that of successional stand dynamics (Oliver and Larson 1990). Our results indicate that disturbance patterns created within site through clearcut harvesting were heterogeneous and even though clearcuts are considered to be one of the more homogeneous disturbances on the landscape, a range of disturbance and thus diversity conditions were created. For example, off trail (O) plots represent an intermediate level of disturbance within the site i.e., removal of overstory which stimulated regeneration plus limited soil disturbance while the landing (L) and skid trail (S) plots had the least amount of regeneration and the highest soil disturbance. Diversity and composition within sites were reflected as a range of neighborhoods with different within neighborhood diversity patterns. While similar patterns due to disturbance occurred on both summer and winter harvest, more heterogeneous species composition existed on winter sites. These results support De Grandpré and Bergeron (1997), who found less change in plant composition in more diverse environments, but in this case our results are confounded by the season of harvest, i.e., more diverse sites had less disturbance. In other words, it is likely the combination of less initial diversity coupled with higher impact through soil compaction that led to greater changes in the plant community on summer harvested sites. Results of a study of varying intensities of silvicultural site preparation treatments in a boreal mixed forest, found that the diversity of understory vegetation increased as compared to undisturbed treatments but did not vary according to intensity of disturbance while species composition did vary with intensity of disturbance (Peltzer et al. 2000). Similar to Peltzer et al. (2000), Haeussler et al. (1999), also looking at intensities of site preparation on vegetation, found that severity of disturbance influenced species composition but in contrast influence on diversity of

species varied across sites within the study. In general compositional differences were due to higher abundance of non-native species occupying the most intensely disturbed areas (Haeussler et al. 1999).

The plant communities of aspen forests have very little time to recover when considering the fairly short rotation time of 45-50 years. This can be important from the standpoint of the maintenance of rare or native plant populations. Initial and remnant understory vegetation of harvested sites are linked to the rate of recovery (Rydgren et al. 1998), with higher proportions of ruderal species extending the recovery time as well as altering the trajectory of the site (Halpern 1988). In our study, the patches with least disturbance may act as species pools (Zobel 1997) that over time, as the canopy closes, provide a source of interior forest species to re-colonize the site. Interior forest herbs use a variety of below ground strategies that enable them to persist in disturbed sites (Lezberg et al. 1999). Although these interior forest species may be available to colonize the more disturbed patches, they are often less competitive than ruderal species in more harsh microclimates (Meier et al. 1995). Again, competition with more ruderal species could slow the rate of recovery or even alter the long term composition of the site by encouraging a greater amount of ruderal species in the soil seed bank (e.g. on our study sites *Rubus ideas* L.). One study of understory vegetation response to clearcutting found that competition with blackberry (*Rubus allegheniensis* T.C. Porter) was likely more influential on diversity than that of regenerating tree species (Yorks and Dabydeen 1999). On sites with greater areas in skid trails and landings, persistence may not be enough, for example a study looking the reproductive ability of herbs, found evidence that there was a threshold size required for sexual reproduction to occur and that there were differences in reproductive ability of plants derived from seeds and those derived from rhizomes, the later allocated more energy to sexual reproduction and clonal growth (Schmid et al. 1995). Additionally, the proximity of intact lower disturbance patches is likely to be important in re-colonization. Spatial distribution of remnant forest species was strongly related to the location of new plants after disturbance created through canopy removal in a northern hardwood forest (Hughes and Fahey 1991). All of these factors point to the importance of limiting not only the level of disturbance but also the area impacted, thus maintaining a spatially connected network of remnant forest patches that are large enough to contain reproductively viable interior forest species.

Management implications

Harvesting, even clearcutting, is a complex disturbance and generalization about the response of understory vegetation to clearcutting have to be made very carefully. Clearcutting leads to a complex matrix of disturbance intensities, e.g., landings and skidtrails are highly disturbed and consequently

understory vegetation on these areas shifts toward invasive, pioneer species, typically grasses and sedges. On the other hand, areas not in skidtrails and landings (the majority of the site) are less impacted and maintain a more stable vegetation community. In the long term, as stands develop, this may allow for reintroduction of species on skidtrails and landings, that were displaced during harvesting. On the other hand, landings and skid trails may facilitate establishment of invasive species that potentially may invade undisturbed portions of the sites later. The sites selected for winter harvest - mainly due to soil moisture conditions - have intrinsically higher understory vegetation diversity. In addition, the disturbance due to harvesting, as measured by soil compaction, is less on winter harvested sites. Together this results in a more stable vegetation community on winter harvested sites. These findings stress the importance of designing harvests to minimize the area in skid trails and landings not only to maintain aspen productivity (see Arikian 2001), but also for maintaining understory vegetation diversity.

The question remains how quickly these ecosystems recover, i.e., how multiple entries impact understory vegetation. In a related study, we were unable to determine the location of skid trails 30 to 50 years after harvest (Berger and Puettmann 2000, data not shown). Our study suggests that mapping designated skid trail systems and utilizing the system for future entries may be especially important on summer harvested sites.

Literature Cited

- Alban, D. H., G. E. Host, and J. D. Elioff and D. A. Shadis. 1994. Soil and vegetation response to soil compaction and forest floor removal after aspen harvesting. USDA Forest Service North Central Experiment Station Research Paper NC 315: 1-8.
- Anderson, J. L., and D. F. Grigal and T. H. Cooper. 1996. Soils and landscapes of Minnesota. Minnesota Extension Service, FO-2331-E.
- Arikian, M. J. 2001. Soil disturbance and residual forest canopy influence tree regeneration in aspen and northern hardwood stands of Minnesota. Masters Thesis, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN.
- Baker, F. S. 1949. A revised tolerance table. *Journal of Forestry* 47: 179-181.
- Bates, P. C. 1990. Quaking aspen regeneration in northern Minnesota: effects of harvest season and site conditions. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN.
- Bazzaz, F. A. 1996. Plants in changing environments: linking physiological, population and community ecology. Cambridge University Press, Great Britain.
- Bennie, A. T. P., and R. D. T. Burger. 1988. Penetration resistance of fine sandy apedal soils as affected by relative bulk density water content and texture. *South African Journal of Plant & Soil* 5: 5-10.
- Berger, A. L., and K. J. Puettmann. 2000. Overstory composition and stand structure influence herbaceous plant diversity in the mixed aspen forest of northern Minnesota. *American Midland Naturalist* 143: 111-125.
- Cardinale, B. J., K. Nelson, and M. A. Palmer. 2000. Linking species diversity to the functioning of ecosystems: on the importance of environmental context. *Oikos* 91: 175-183.
- Collins, B. S., K. P. Dunne, and S. T. Pickett. 1985. Responses of forest herbs to canopy gaps. Pages 217-234 in S. T. A. Pickett, and P. S. White, editors. *The ecology of natural disturbance and patch dynamics*. Academic Press, Orlando, FL.
- Connell, J. H. 1978. Diversity in tropical rain forests and coral reefs. *Science* 199: 1302-1310.
- Connell, J. H., and W. P. Sousa. 1983. On the evidence needed to judge ecological stability or persistence. *The American Naturalist* 121: 789-824.
- De Grandpré, L., and Y. Bergeron. 1997. Diversity and stability of understory communities following disturbance in the southern boreal forest. *Journal of Ecology* 85: 777-784.
- Denslow, J. S. 1985. Disturbance-mediated coexistence of species. Pages 307-323 in S. T. A. Pickett, and P. S. White, editors. *The ecology of natural disturbance and patch dynamics*. Academic Press, Orlando, FL.
- Dufrene, M., and P. Legendre. 1997. Species assemblages and indicator species: the need for a flexible asymmetrical approach. *Ecological Monographs* 67: 345-366.
- Edwards, P. J., and C. Abivardi. 1998. The value of biodiversity: where ecology and economy blend. *Biological Conservation* 83: 239-246.

- Franklin, J. F., D. A. Perry, T. D. Schowalter, M. E. Harmon, A. McKee, and T. A. Spies. 1989. Importance of ecological diversity in maintaining long-term site productivity. Pages 82-97 in D. A. Perry, R. Meurisse, B. Thomas, R. Miller, J. Boyle, J. Means, C. R. Perry, and R. F. Powers, editors. *Maintaining the long-term productivity of Pacific Northwest forest ecosystems*. Timber Press, Portland, OR.
- Gleason H. A. and A. Cronquist. 1991. *Manual of Vascular Plants of Northeastern United States and Adjacent Canada*. 2nd ed. The New York Botanical Garden, New York.
- Grace, J. B. 1999. The factors controlling species density in herbaceous plant communities: an assessment. *Perspectives in Plant Ecology, Evolution and Systematics* 2: 1-28.
- Grigal, D. F. 1973. Note on the hydrometer method of particle-size analysis. *Minnesota Forest Research Notes* 245: 1-4.
- Grime, J. P. 1979. *Plant strategies and vegetation processes*. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, United Kingdom.
- Grubb, P. J. 1977. The maintenance of species-richness in plant communities: the importance of the regeneration niche. *Biological Review* 5: 107-145.
- Haeussler, S., D. Coates, and J. Mather. 1990. Autecology of common plants in British Columbia: a literature review. *Canada-British Columbia Economic & Regional Development Agreement, Forestry Canada & British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Victoria FRDA Report No. 158*.
- Haeussler, S., L. Bedford, J. O. Boateng, and A. MacKinnon. 1999. Plant community responses to mechanical site preparation in northern interior British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 29: 1084-1100.
- Halpern, C. B. 1988. Early successional pathways and the resistance and resilience of forest communities. *Ecology* 69: 1703-1715.
- Halpern, C. B., and T. A. Spies. 1995. Plant species diversity in natural and managed forests of the Pacific Northwest. *Ecological Applications* 5: 913-934.
- Hill, M. O., and H.G. Gauch. 1980. Detrended correspondence analysis: an improved ordination technique. *Vegetatio* 42: 47-58.
- Hughes, J. W., and T. J. Fahey. 1991. Colonization dynamics of herbs and shrubs in a disturbed northern hardwood forest. *Journal of Ecology* 79: 605-616.
- Jaakko Pöyry Consulting, Inc. 1992. *Maintaining productivity and the forest resource base. A technical paper for a generic environmental impact statement on timber harvesting and forest management in Minnesota*. Jaakko Pöyry Consulting, Inc., Tarrytown, NY.
- Kramer, C. Y. 1956. Extension of multiple range test to group means with unequal numbers of replications. *Biometrics* 12: 307-310.
- Legendre, P., and L. Legendre. 1998. *Numerical Ecology*. 2nd ed. Elsevier Science, Amsterdam.

- Lezberg, A. L., J. A. Antos, and C. B. Halpern. 1999. Belowground traits of herbaceous species in young coniferous forests of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 77: 936-943.
- Loreau M. 2000. Biodiversity and ecosystem functioning: recent theoretical advances. *Oikos* 91: 3-17.
- Magurran, A. E. 1988. Ecological diversity and its measurement. Princeton University Press, Princeton, New Jersey.
- McCune B. and M. J. Mefford. 1997. PC-ORD: A Multivariate Analysis of Ecological Data, Version 3.05. MjM Software Design, Glenden Beach, Oregon, USA.
- Meier, A. J., S. P. Bratton, and D. C. Duffy. 1995. Possible ecological mechanisms for loss of vernal-herb diversity in logged eastern deciduous forests. *Ecological Applications* 5: 935-946.
- Mielke, P. W. Jr. 1984. Meteorological applications of permutation techniques based on distance functions. Pages 813-830 in P. R. Krishnaiah, and P. K. Sen, editors. *Handbook of statistics*. Vol. 4. Elsevier Science Publishers, Amsterdam.
- Mueller-Dumbois, D., and H. Ellenberg. 1974. Aims and methods of vegetation ecology. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York.
- Oliver, C. D., and B. C. Larson. 1990. *Forest Stand Dynamics*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York.
- Peltzer, D. A., M. L. Bast, S. D. Wilson, and A. K. Gerry. 2000. Plant diversity and tree responses following contrasting disturbances in boreal forest. *Forest Ecology & Management* 127: 191-203.
- Perala, D. A. 1977. *Manager's handbook for aspen in the north-central states*. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, MN, General Technical Report NC-36.
- . 1990. *Populus tremuloides* Michx., quaking aspen: *Salicaceae*, willow family. Pages 555-569 in R. M. Burn, and B. H. Honkala, tech. coord. *Silvics of North America*. Vol. 2: Hardwoods. USDA Forest Service, Washington, D.C.
- Pielou, E. C. 1975. *Ecological Diversity*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York,
- Roberts, M. R., and F. S. Gilliam. 1995. Patterns and mechanisms of plant diversity in forested ecosystems: implications for forest management. *Ecological Applications* 5: 969-977.
- Ruark, G. A., D. L. Mader, and T. A. Tattar. 1982. The influence of soil compaction and aeration on the root growth and vigor of trees--A literature review. Part 1. *Arboricultural Journal* 6: 251-65.
- Rydgren, K., G. Hestmark, and R. H. Okland. 1998. Revegetation following experimental disturbance in a boreal old-growth *Picea abies* forest. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 9: 763-776.
- SAS [Statistical Analysis Systems Institute]. 1999. JMP Ver. 3.2.6. SAS Institute, Cary, NC.
- Schier, G. A., W. D. Shepperd, and J. R. Jones. 1985. *Regeneration. Aspen ecology and management in the western United States*, USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, General Technical Report RM-119.

- Schmid, B., F. A. Bazzaz, and J. Weiner. 1995. Size dependency of sexual reproduction and of clonal growth in two perennial plants. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 73: 1831-1837.
- Schwartz, M. W., C. A. Brigham, J. D. Hoeksema, K. G. Lyons, M. H. Mills, and P. J. van Mantgen. 2000. Linking biodiversity to ecosystem function: implications for conservation ecology. *Oecologia* 122: 297-305.
- Shepperd, W. D. 1993. The effect of harvesting activities on soil compaction, root damage, and suckering in Colorado aspen. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry* 8: 62-66.
- Smidt, M. F. 1996. Production, soil disturbance and regeneration of wide tire skidder harvests of quaking aspen in east central Minnesota. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN.
- Ter Braak, C. F. 1995. Ordination. Pages 91-169 in R. H. G. Jongman, C. J. F. Ter Braak, and O. F. R. Van Tongeren, editors. *Data analysis in community and landscape ecology*. Cambridge University Press, Great Britain.
- Tuttle, C. L., M. S. Golden, and R. S. Meldahl. 1985. Surface soil removal and herbicide treatment: effects on soil properties and loblolly pine early growth. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 49: 1558-1562.
- Welch, B. L. 1951. On the comparison of several mean values: an alternative approach. *Biometrika* 38: 330-336.
- Yorks, T. E., and S. Dabydeen. 1999. Seasonal and successional understory vascular plant diversity in second-growth hardwood clearcuts of western Maryland, USA. *Forest Ecology & Management* 119: 217-230.
- Zasada, J. C., C. W. Slaughter, C. E. Teutsch, J. D. Argyle, and W. Hill. 1987. Winter logging on the Tanana river flood plain in interior Alaska. *Northern Journal of Applied Forestry* 4: 11-16.
- Zasada, Z. A., and J. C. Tappeiner. 1969. Full-tree harvesting system aids forest management. University of Minnesota, School of Forestry, St. Paul, MN For. Res. Notes No. 205.
- Zimmerman, G. M., H. Goetz, and P. Mielke. 1985. Use of an improved statistical method for group comparisons to study effects of prairie fire. *Ecology* 66: 606-611.
- Zobel, M. 1997. The relative role of species pools in determining plant species richness: an alternative explanation of species coexistence? *Tree* 12: 266-269.

Table 1. Site descriptions by season of harvest: Site code, Age (growing seasons since harvest), SI - aspen 50-y site index. Mean compaction, aspen regeneration and residual basal area are given by disturbance categories Landing (L, n=1), Skid-trail (S, n=2) and controls (Off landings and skid-trails) (O, n=2). Values in parenthesis represent \pm 1SE.

Age (y)	SI (m)	Compaction (kPa)			Aspen Regeneration (tpha)			Residual BA (m ² /ha)			
		L	S	O	L	S	O	L	S	O	
Summer											
(n=45)											
7	24	5599	7398 (1131)	5524 (3499)	0	2500 (3536)	42500 (14849)	0	0	0.5 (0.7)	
7	23	4399	4249 (1901)	1400 (71)	0	500 (707)	11000 (4243)	0	1.5 (2.1)	0	
6	24	1200	1475 (177)	1200 (0)	0	500 (707)	5500 (2121)	4	7.5 (0.7)	12.5 (10.6)	
6	24	1550	1975 (601)	1125 (106)	0	17000 (24042)	37500 (50205)	8	0	0	
5	22	4199	4999 (0)	3799 (707)	0	5000 (7071)	22500 (17678)	0	7.5 (2.1)	13 (5.7)	
5	26	6098	5899 (1979)	4150 (2333)	0	17500 (24749)	29500 (12021)	0	0	0	
6	24	2499	2000 (141)	1350 (495)	0	0	2500 (3536)	4	2.5 (0.7)	3 (2.8)	
4	20	6398	3099 (706)	3299 (1273)	0	5000 (0)	54500 (2121)	0	1 (1.4)	0	
5	21	7648	7898 (141)	3999 (141)	21000	500 (707)	38000 (24042)	2	0.5 (0.7)	3 (2.8)	
Winter											
(n=49)											
6	23	7198	3249 (2474)	6398 (566)	0	5000 (7071)	35500 (7779)	0	0.5 (0.7)	0	
5	23	1600	1650 (212)	2699 (707)	7000	17000 (2828)	44000 (2828)	2	0	0	
4	23	4599	6698 (141)	2974 (672)	10000	10000 (4950)	37500 (12021)	0	3.5 (2.1)	0	
6	23	6198	6148 (2757)	4849 (495)	0	9000 (0)	19500 (12021)	0	0	1 (1.4)	
6	25	7998	6948 (71)	4249 (495)	0	3500 (0)	47000 (9900)	1	1 (0)	2 (2.8)	
11	15	5399	4699 (1838)	3699 (283)	0	0	29000 (11314)	0	0	1 (1.4)	
4	23	3399	5949 (707)	2100 (--)	10000	0	41000 (--)	5	0.5 (--)	1 (--)	
11	23	4599	5949 (71)	4049 (2333)	0	0	20500 (4950)	0	0	0	
8	24	3199	6248 (212)	4399 (2823)	3000	9500 (3536)	11000 (1414)	0	0	0	
6	24	6698	4249 (636)	6498 (1273)	10000	500 (707)	16500 (6364)	0	0.5 (0.7)	2 (1.4)	

* missing one O plot

Table 2a. ANOVA and TKHSD means comparisons for compaction in disturbance categories Landing (L), Skid-trail (S) and Off (O) grouped by season of harvest (summer vs. winter). Different lower-case letters indicate significantly different ($p = 0.05$) means for disturbance categories.

Disturbance	Mean \pm SE	n	Mean \pm SE	n
	Summer		Winter	
L	214.38 \pm 23.54 a	8	156.44 \pm 19.61 ab	9
S	204.5 \pm 16.65 a	16	164.72 \pm 13.86 a	18
O	129.06 \pm 16.65 b	16	110.81 \pm 14.70 b	16
	$F = 6.77, df = 2$		$F = 9.35, df = 2$	
	$p = 0.003$		$p = 0.002$	

Table 2b. ANOVA and TKHSD means comparisons for compaction by season of harvest with plots combined for disturbance categories (L and S, O). Different lower-case letters indicate significantly different ($p = 0.05$) means for season categories.

Season	Mean \pm SE	n	Mean \pm SE	n
	L and S plots		O plots	
Summer	207.79 \pm 14.84 a	24	129.06 \pm 9.62 a	16
Winter	161.96 \pm 13.99 b	27	110.81 \pm 9.62a	16
	$F = 5.05$		$F = 1.80$	
	$p = 0.029, df = 1$		$p = 0.20, df = 1$	

Table 3a. Species indicative of disturbance categories within summer harvested sites. The Maximum IV was used to test significance for species by disturbance category ($p \leq 0.05$). Relative abundance and relative frequency show the shift in dominance of species by disturbance groups.

	Species	Relative Abundance (%)		Relative Frequency (%)		Max IV
		High plots	Low Plots	High Plots	Low Plots	
High	<i>Agrostis gigantea</i> Roth	100	0	29	0	29
	<i>Betula papyrifera</i> Marshall	77	23	92	56	70
	<i>Erigeron strigosus</i> Muhl.	100	0	33	0	33
	<i>Fragaria virginiana</i> Duchesne	77	23	88	81	68
	<i>Geum aleppicum</i> Jacq.	100	0	33	0	33
	<i>Juncus tenuis</i> Willd.	100	0	33	0	33
	<i>Phleum pratense</i> L.	100	0	33	0	33
	<i>Poa spp.</i> L.	100	0	33	0	33
	<i>Rubus ideaus</i> L.	71	29	96	81	68
	<i>Taraxacum officianale</i> Weber ex Wiggers	84	16	88	19	74
Low	<i>Abies balsamea</i> (L.) Miller	30	70	33	63	44
	<i>Acer rubrum</i> L.	32	68	50	81	55
	<i>Acer saccharum</i> L.	11	89	33	63	56
	<i>Acer spicatum</i> Lam.	14	86	33	56	48
	<i>Anemone quinquefolia</i> L.	18	82	17	50	41
	<i>Apocynum androsaemefolium</i> L.	28	72	29	56	40
	<i>Aralia nudicaulis</i> L.	16	84	46	94	80
	<i>Clintonia borealis</i> (Aiton) Raf.	18	82	29	69	57
	<i>Corylus cornuta</i> Marshall	20	80	71	94	75
	<i>Impatiens capensis</i> Meerb.	0	100	0	19	19
	<i>Lonicera canadensis</i> Marshall	20	80	21	56	45
	<i>Maianthemum canadense</i> Desf.	26	74	50	88	65
	<i>Rubus pubescens</i> Michx.	33	67	25	69	46
	<i>Streptopus roseus</i> Michx.	25	75	33	63	47

Table 3b. Species indicative of disturbance categories within winter harvested sites. The Maximum IV is used to test significance for disturbance category ($p \leq 0.05$). Relative abundance and relative frequency show shift in dominance of species by disturbance groups.

Species	Relative Abundance (%)		Relative Frequency (%)		Max IV
	High plots	Low Plots	High Plots	Low Plots	
High					
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.	100	0	26	0	26
<i>Agrostis gigantea</i> Roth	100	0	30	0	30
<i>Betula papyrifera</i> Marshall	77	23	78	19	60
<i>Carex spp</i> L.. (Ovales type)	90	10	48	6	43
<i>Fragaria virginiana</i> Duchesne	80	20	96	88	77
<i>Juncus tenuis</i> Willd.	100	0	30	0	30
<i>Onoclea sensibilis</i> L.	100	0	22	0	22
<i>Phleum pratense</i> L.	100	0	33	0	33
<i>Poa spp.</i> L.	100	0	33	0	33
<i>Prunella vulgaris</i> L.	100	0	30	0	30
<i>Rubus ideaus</i> L.	76	24	96	88	73
<i>Salix spp</i> L.	98	2	56	6	55
<i>Scirpus cyperinus</i> (L.) Kunth.	100	0	44	0	44
<i>Taraxacum officianale</i> Weber ex Wiggers	82	18	63	13	52
<i>Trifolium hybridum</i> L.	100	0	37	0	37
Low					
<i>Anemone quinquefolia</i> L.	25	75	26	75	56
<i>Aralia nudicaulis</i> L.	19	81	59	100	81
<i>Aster macrophyllus</i> L.	21	79	93	100	79
<i>Botrychium virginianum</i> L. (Swartz)	15	85	4	25	21
<i>Carex pennsylvanica</i> Lam.	7	93	11	44	41
<i>Clintonia borealis</i> (Aiton) Raf.	28	72	30	63	45
<i>Cornus alternifolia</i> L.f.	14	86	7	44	38
<i>Corylus cornuta</i> Marshall	22	78	63	88	69
<i>Lonicera canadensis</i> Marshall	15	85	7	44	37
<i>Maianthemum canadense</i> Desf.	38	62	56	81	50
<i>Oryzopsis asperifolia</i> Michx.	28	72	41	75	54
<i>Osmorhiza claytonii</i> Michx.	19	81	15	50	41
<i>Ribes cynosbati</i> L.	0	100	0	25	25
<i>Rubus pubescens</i> Raf.	27	73	48	88	64
<i>Tilia americana</i> L.	16	84	22	56	47
<i>Trientalis borealis</i> Raf.	11	89	11	44	39
<i>Ulmus Americana</i> L.	13	87	4	25	22
<i>Uvularia sessilifolia</i> L.	21	79	11	38	30

Table 4a. ANOVA and TKHSD means comparisons for Richness and Evenness in disturbance categories Landing (L), Skid-trail (S) and Off (O) grouped by season of harvest (summer vs. winter). Different lower-case letters indicate significantly different ($p = 0.05$) means for disturbance categories.

Disturbance	Mean \pm SE		n	Mean \pm SE		n
	Summer			Winter		
	Richness	Evenness		Richness	Evenness	
L	38.63 \pm 2.17 a	0.79 \pm 0.04 a	8	41.67 \pm 2.38 ab	0.81 \pm 0.03 a	9
S	39.0 \pm 1.54 a	0.77 \pm 0.03 a	16	43.89 \pm 1.68 a	0.86 \pm 0.02 a	18
O	30.47 \pm 1.59 b	0.80 \pm 0.03 a	15	37.75 \pm 1.78 b	0.83 \pm 0.02 a	16
	$F = 8.66, df = 2$ $P = 0.001$	$F = 0.27, df = 2$ $P = 0.766$		$F = 3.17, df = 2$ $P = 0.053$	$F = 1.39, df = 2$ $P = 0.26$	

Table 4b. ANOVA and TKHSD means comparisons for Richness and Evenness by season of harvest with plots combined for disturbance categories (L and S, O). Different lower-case letters indicate significantly different ($p = 0.05$) means by season categories.

Disturbance	Mean \pm SE		n	Mean \pm SE		n
	L and S plots			O plots		
	Richness	Evenness		Richness	Evenness	
S	38.88 \pm 1.38 a	0.77 \pm 0.02 a	24	30.47 \pm 1.64 a	0.80 \pm 0.03 a	15
W	43.15 \pm 1.30 b	0.85 \pm 0.02 b	27	37.75 \pm 1.59 b	0.83 \pm 0.02 a	16
	$F = 5.05, df = 1$ $P = 0.029$	$F = 9.42, df = 1$ $P = 0.004$		$F = 10.19, df = 1$ $P = 0.003$	$F = 0.80, df = 1$ $P = 0.38$	

Table 5. ANOVA and TKHSD means comparisons for standardized aspen regeneration and residual basal area in disturbance categories Landing (L), Skid-trail (S) and Off (O) grouped by season of harvest (summer and winter). Different lower-case letters indicate significantly different ($p = 0.05$) means by disturbance categories.

Disturbance	Mean \pm SE		n	Mean \pm SE		n
	Summer			Winter		
	Regeneration	Residual BA		Regeneration	Residual BA	
L	12.5 \pm 15.80 a	2.25 \pm 1.36 a	8	19.00 \pm 8.88 a	0.67 \pm 0.45 a	9
S	12.38 \pm 11.17 a	1.63 \pm 0.96 a	16	12.78 \pm 6.28 a	0.67 \pm 0.32 a	18
O	94.19 \pm 11.17 b	2.38 \pm 0.96 a	16	102.0 \pm 6.66 b	0.81 \pm 0.34 a	16
	$F = 16.08, df = 2$ $P = 0.001$	$F = 0.17, df = 2$ $P = 0.85$		$F = 53.93, df = 2$ $P < 0.001$	$F = 0.06, df = 2$ $P = 0.94$	

Figure 1. Plot layout: using the network of skid trails created during the harvesting operation a gradient of disturbance conditions were identified across each site. Relevé plots were placed in areas identified by level of disturbance, one "L" plot was placed in or adjacent to the landing, two "S" plots were placed within skid trails, and two "O" plots were placed off of skid trails and landings.

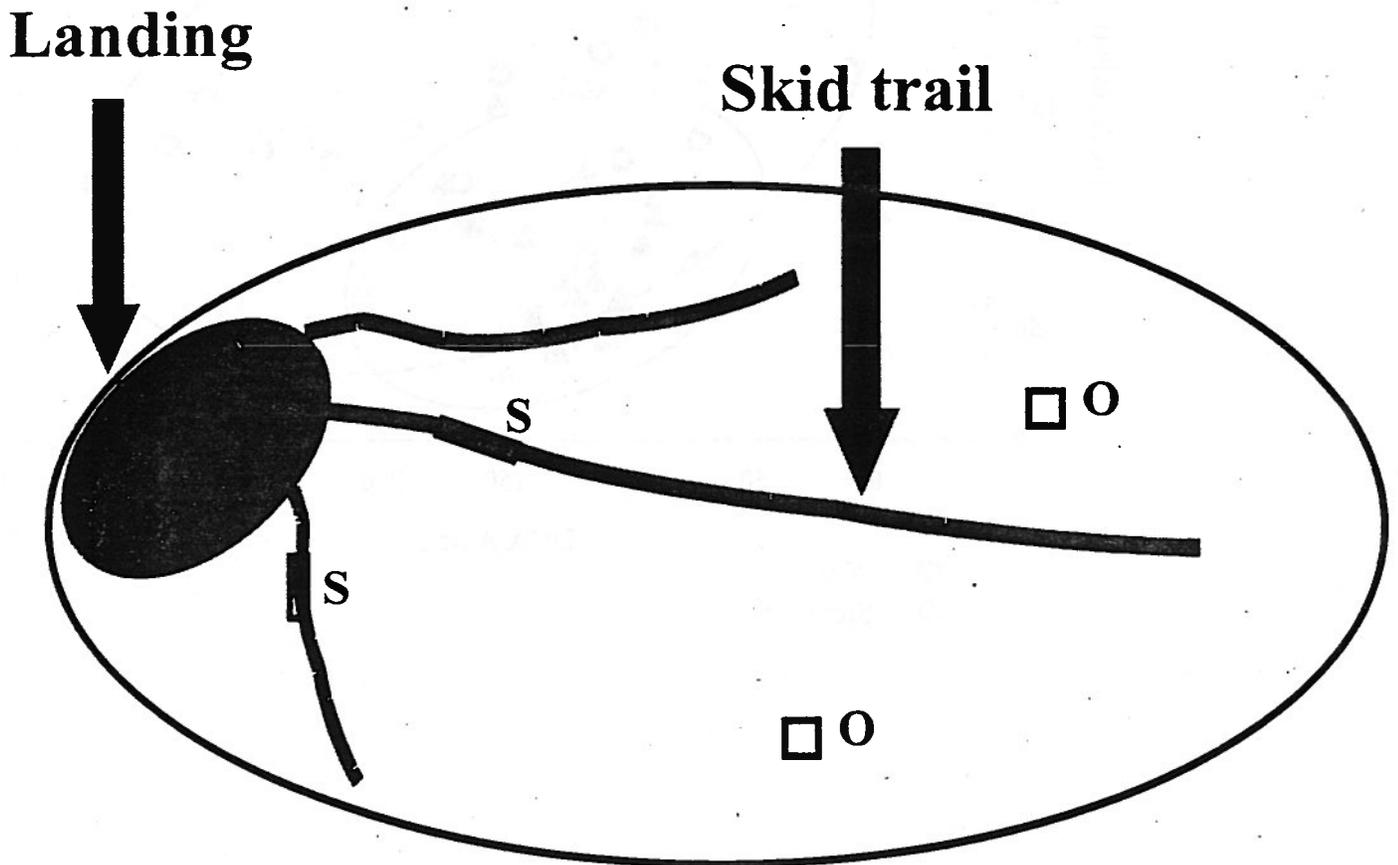


Figure 2a. Detrended correspondence analysis (DCA) of higher disturbance (L and S combined) vegetation plots by season of harvest. Bivariate ellipses represent 95% of data within season of harvest categories.

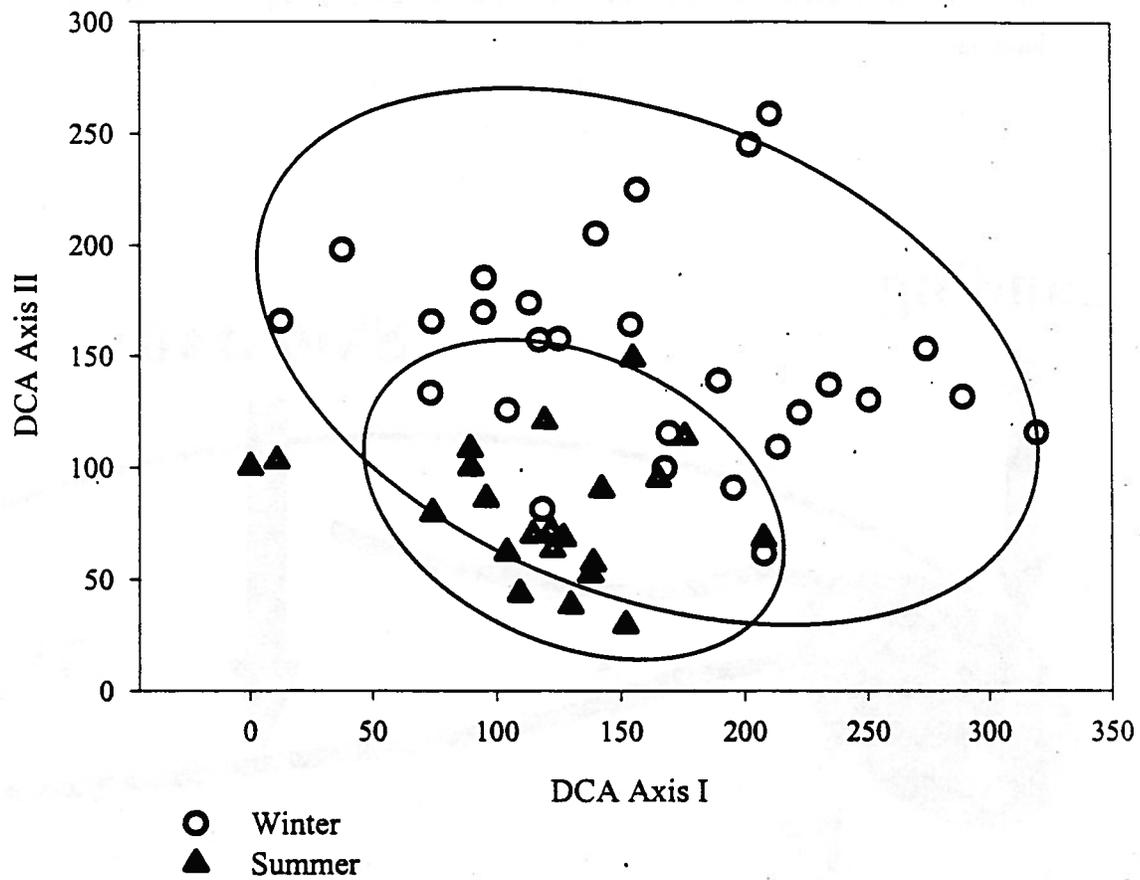
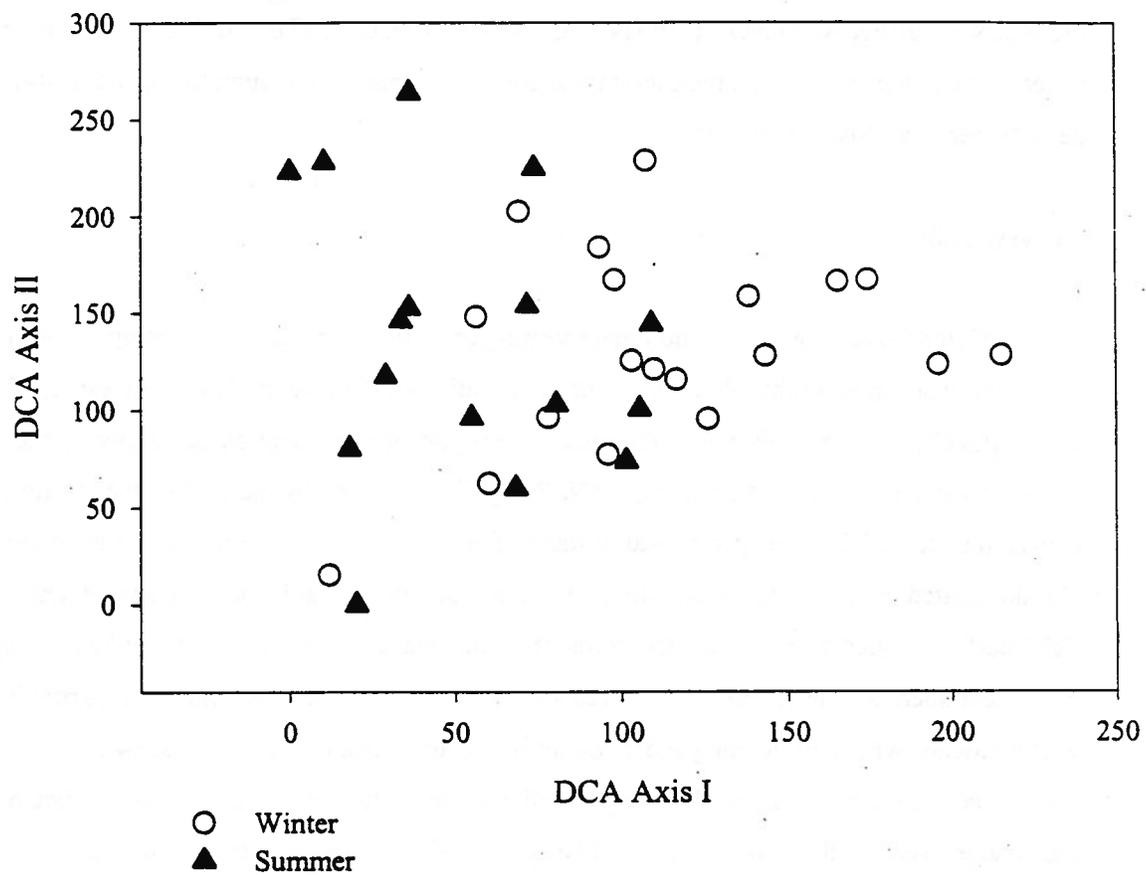


Figure 2b. Detrended correspondence analysis (DCA) of control conditions using off trail (O) vegetation plots to comparing inherent site difference between winter and summer harvested sites.



BOONE SALE - PROJECT STATUS

March, 2001

Background

The Boone Sale is a case study that was designed to meet Objective 3 in the proposal: IMPACTS OF HARVESTING ON REGENERATION, PRODUCTIVITY, AND FLORISTIC DIVERSITY OF QUAKING ASPEN AND NORTHERN HARDWOOD ECOSYSTEMS. More specifically the goal was to set up case studies in which the pre-harvest conditions, harvesting operations, and post-harvest development are closely monitored.

Harvest design

Control over site access and the harvesting operation is critical for creating the study conditions necessary to accomplish this objective. The cooperation of the University of Minnesota, Cloquet Forestry Center (CFC), will meet this need. The study site is part of a 160 acre parcel known as the Boone property, located in Sec. 30, Township 55N, Range 21W, owned by the University of Minnesota and managed by the CFC. The specific study stand of approximately 20 acres is a mature stand, 55 to 65 years old, dominated by birch and aspen with a minor component of maple, oak, basswood, and balsam fir. The CFC staff developed a timber sale to harvest the study stand. The harvest was laid out to represent a typical commercial timber sale for this area and stand type, which is a commercial partial harvest clearcut with residuals, where all quaking aspen, paper birch, and balsam fir greater than 4.5 inches DBH were cut. Other tree species were left on the site for habitat or aesthetic objectives. Retained species consisted of oak, maple, basswood and white cedar. The specified harvest system employed was what is commonly referred to as a mechanized "full tree" system, consisting of a feller-buncher, delimeter, grapple skidder, and slasher. The timber sale plan for the study stand contained several constraints to ensure accomplishment of the study objectives. As part of the harvest planning process, the landing area(s) were specified based on the geometry and topography of the study stand. This aided in pre-harvest plot selection.

Pre-harvest sampling

Permanent Plots: Upon completion of the sale area map and designation of the landing area(s), thirty 3-m x 20-m permanent plots were established for pre-harvest sampling, one plot on the designated landing area,

22 plots on areas covering the range of disturbance on skid trails ranging from heavily used to only used once or twice, and 7 plots on areas expected to be undisturbed by the harvesting operation. Each plot was permanently located by stake chaser flags securely driven flush into the ground surface with a 12 inch nail on each of the four corners and center of each plot. Red chaser flags are always on the right side of plots heading east towards the de-limbing area and main road. Chaser flags in the center of the plot are orange. All permanent plots were mapped with a Laser Criterion and UTM coordinates for plot centers recorded with the Trimble Pathfinder GPS.

Overstory conditions: Overstory composition and basal area were measured in a 2-m² prism plot from each 3-m x 20-m plot center. For trees inside the permanent plots, measurements include azimuth and distance from the center of the plot and DBH. Heights, and crown length (LCR) were measured for two trees per species (randomly chosen). For these randomly chosen trees crown density will be used as an indicator of vigor. Crown dieback was visually classified into three crown density classes (fully leafed, 20 to 50% leaf loss, >50% leaf loss). All trees measured were tagged at the base with round aluminum tags for future sprouting measurements.

Ground vegetation: Ground vegetation was characterized for the 3-m x 20-m plot following the relevé method described in Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg (1974). Specifically, on each relevé plot, occurrence of all vascular plant species was recorded and placed in a cover class: (1) single occurrence, (2) <5% (occasional), (3) <5% (plentiful), (4) 5-25%, (5) 26-50%, (6) 51-75%, and (7) 76-100%.

Regeneration: 1) Oak regeneration will be monitored on two subplots (1-m x 3-m) located on opposite ends of each permanent plot (60 plots total). Aluminum tags were placed at the base of oak seedlings and height was recorded. 2) Post-harvest birch sprouting will be monitored on the permanent plot. If a permanent plot contained less than 5 paper birch, additional paper birch were selected from outside the plot for measurement to ensure a total of 5 birch were measured per permanent plot. In addition, all yellow birch within a 20-m radius from plot center were measured.

Soils: Soil samples were taken from half sections of each permanent plot with each section located on opposite-cross corners (Fig. 1). This design left a portion of each permanent plot undisturbed by sampling in order to repeat sampling plots after the harvest. On each half section of permanent plot an average of 20 soil cone penetrometer readings (to 15 cm depth) were taken as a measure of pre-harvest soil strength using the RIMIK CP 20 Cone Penetrometer. Soil samples were collected from the top 15 cm of the soil profile for a subset of 15 plots for soil particle size analysis (Grigal 1973). Bulk density samples were collected

on the same subset of 15 plots. The bulk density samples were taken with both a soil core sampler (Blake and Hartge 1986) and by the irregular-hole method (Howard and Singer 1981). Specifically, on all 15 subplots, four soil cores were taken using a (1131.5 mL) core sampler and on half of these subplots four pits were excavated with variable volumes. Both methods were destructive to the vegetation and therefore each bulk density sample was taken just outside of the permanent plot border (Fig. 1).

Coarse Woody Debris (CWD): CWD was inventoried for each permanent plot. Every log with a large end diameter of ≥ 5.0 cm was given a decay class code as follows: 0 = Recent - bark intact, small twigs present, wood firm; 1 = Moderately old - bark only partially intact, small twigs absent, wood firm; 2 = Old - bark mostly separated from sapwood and sloughed off (except in paper birch), large branches present, wood soft; 3 = Very Old - bark absent or only fragments remaining (except in paper birch); 4 = Extremely old - no wood remains and applies to mounds and pits. Total length of logs occurring within the plot boundary was measured (m) and diameter at the large end of the log was recorded (cm). If species of the log could be discerned it was recorded. Snags ≥ 5.0 cm in diameter were also measured within each permanent plot. Total height (m) and diameter (cm) were taken for each snag (at breast height if possible, other wise at top portion of snag). Similar decay class codes were applied: 0 = Recent - small twigs present, bark whole, may have wilted leaves; 1 = Moderately Old - small twigs still present but no leaves, bark whole; 2 = Old - bark mostly separated from sapwood, large branches present; 3 = Very Old - bark absent or only in fragments (except birch), branches missing, wood unsound. Species was recorded for those snags that could be identified. Stumps were measured as snags in addition to logs that were leaning or propped against other trees.

Harvesting

Harvesting began in the Fall of 1999 but was terminated within one day due to wet conditions. A portion of the landing area was cleared but stumps were not removed or pushed out of the area. The portion of the landing cleared during this operation was mapped using the Trimble GPS. The following summer harvesting occurred from August 9-23, 2000. Weather conditions were dry for most of the harvest with some rain during the second week. The soil was wet enough to cause some diversion of skid trails on steep slopes. A landing area off site previously used by a St. Louis County harvest was used for slashing and loading trees onto trucks. The area previously designated as the landing in the Fall of 1999 was used for delimiting activities and skidder turn around. Some rutting did occur in the delimiting area and entrance to the site but not on most trails within the sale. When possible, only one machine (harvester or

skidder) operated at a time. This constraint was to allow intensive monitoring of each machine as it worked in the stand. When this was not possible (usually due to the need to make faster progress before weather conditions worsened), on the ground notes were collected by field crew positioned at the landing and at points within the stand where operations were taking place (e.g. skidder pick up and drop off of log piles). The timber sale specified that felling was to begin from the roadside and work into the stand, constantly opening a larger vista to satellite reception by the GPS system in order to improve the accuracy of the monitoring of the felling equipment. This was achieved for the most part, with some gaps in GPS coverage occurring due to poor satellite positioning (issue of time of day rather than canopy cover). During some of the gaps in coverage, ground notes will aid in filling in equipment traffic patterns. During the harvest, field crew constantly took note of plot conditions (i.e. traffic on plot) and marked any nearby residual tree that would be left as an aid in future location of permanent plots. Soil samples were collected periodically to track soil moisture conditions throughout the harvest. During the harvest, the tree species were noted for all loads.

Post harvest sampling

Permanent plots: In Fall 2000, permanent plots were re-located using a combination of chaser flags, a metal detector to find buried flags, and marked residual trees. If no trace of plot markings was available, the GPS unit was used to navigate to plot centers previously surveyed. Once plots were located, pin flags were used to mark the corners. Soil penetrometer and bulk density samples were taken using the pre-harvest protocol. The extent of skid trails and permanent plots were re-surveyed using the GPS unit (Fig. 1).

Office and Lab work

Soils: Soil penetrometer data for both pre- and post-harvest conditions are entered into a spreadsheet. Soil moisture and bulk density samples from pre-harvest conditions have been processed while post-harvest samples are to be processed this winter.

Analysis goals for the GPS data: The GPS data taken during the harvesting operation, load information, results of the disturbance assessment, soil sample information, and cone penetrometer measurements of soil strength will all be combined into a comprehensive map of impacts to the site caused by the harvesting operation. Several measures of impact (e.g., area in difference disturbance/compaction categories) will be developed. Regeneration and ground vegetation data taken over the span of several years will be

correlated to the impact measurements to develop relationships between site impacts and subsequent productivity of the site.

Data storage and file organization - Trimble GPS data can be accessed in both Trimble Pathfinder format (Pathfinder Office 2.50, Copyright 8 1996-1999, Trimble Navigation Limited) and Microsoft Excel. All 110,926 records have been differentially corrected using the Itasca County base station (URS type) located in Grand Rapids, MN at Lat. 47 14 11.120526 N Lon. 93 31 32.222568 W Altitude 404.891. Separate files, by date downloaded (day of harvest), exist in both formats but have also been combined to create master files by week for the harvesting period (there are too many records to combine into one excel sheet).

Data cleaning and analysis preparation - Gaps in data (i.e. loss of transmission due to satellite coverage or due to both harvester and skidder operating simultaneously) have been identified by time stamp. Date and time stamps will be used to look for notes on where the equipment was located. Once the note is found in the field notebook for a gap in time, an estimate of UTM location will be determined (based on pre-survey data) and added as a new record with notation that it is an estimate rather than a location recorded during the Harvest. For example, first using field notes, a list is made of plots that have been "hit" (have traffic from skidder or feller buncher) by equipment within the time gap in GPS coverage, then second, match the plots to estimated UTM locations for those plots (based on previous survey of plot centers). Attributes for each record will be added from field notes where appropriate (e.g. species of log piles, loaded vs. unloaded).

Post harvest sampling - TO BE DONE next spring and following years*

Harvesting impact: at each permanent plot a team of two observers will make a visual assessment of site effects. Point observations will be made in the center of each plot by identifying the visible layer in a 30-cm circle at each point and evaluating the level of disturbance at the point. Visible layer categories are litter, organic soil, mineral soil, muck, slash, or non-soil. Disturbance categories are undisturbed, trafficked, scarified, gouged, rutted, mounded, covered, or unknown (unknown is only used in the case of heavy slash cover where the conditions of the soil cannot be assessed.)

Residual Overstory: Pre-harvest measurements will be repeated the first and fifth year after harvest. Mortality and vigor (crown density) will be assessed annually. Physical condition of residual trees will

also be noted (if scarred: proportion of stem scarred, diameter of scar and height on the stem). Damage to residual tree crowns will be noted: 1) size of branches broken, 2) % crown damaged.

Ground Vegetation: Ground vegetation will be assessed using the relevé method (as in pre-harvest sampling) yearly during July or August in years one and five for a minimum of five years.

Tree Regeneration: Regeneration measurements on established plots will include number of trees and average and top height for each species (this includes counting number of sprouts per stump for an estimate of density-competition). Origin of tree regeneration (sprouts, suckers, seed) will also be documented. The general condition of stumps will be recorded: 1) proportion of stump driven over, 2) % bark removed, 3) height of stump, 4) diameter of stump and 4) bud bank condition (Tappeiner et al. 1996).

Browsing pressure from white tailed deer will be measured as number of browsed stems per stump, or by seedling.

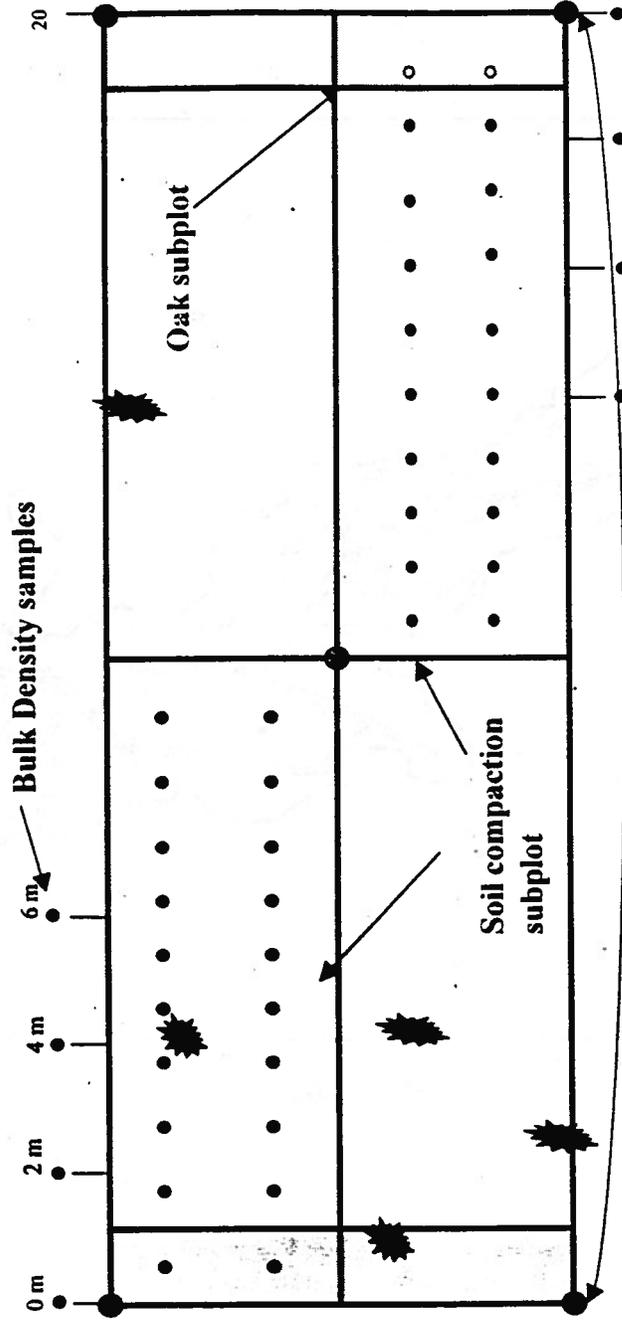
To increase the sampling of regeneration, additional regeneration plots will be established under a range of overstory conditions (various amounts of residuals). In these plots, the total amount of tree regeneration (number of trees/plot) will be counted. The average and top height for each species will be measured each year. In addition, the above measurements will be made for stumps of birch marked pre-harvest. Sub plots for oak regeneration will be re-located and an assessment each oak seedling made (potential categories could be *e.g.* live, uprooted, if rooted-bark intact).

*The exact intensity of measurements, *e.g.*, yearly vs. in years one and five, will be determined by the availability of funds over the next few years.

Literature Cited

- Blake, G. R., and K. H. Hartge. 1986. Bulk Density. Pages 363-375 in *Methods of Soil Analysis, Part 1. Physical and Mineralogical Methods*. Agronomy Monograph no. 9.
- Howard, R. F., and M.J. Singer. 1981. Measuring forest soil bulk density using irregular hole, paraffin clod, and air permeability. *Forest Science* 27:316-322.
- Mueller-Dombois, P., and H. Ellenberg. 1974. *Aims and methods of vegetation ecology*. John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY. 547 p.
- Tappeiner, J. C., J. Zasada, D. Huffman, and B. Maxwell. 1996. Effects of cutting time, stump height, parent tree characteristics, and harvest variables on development of bigleaf maple sprout clumps. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry* 11: 120-124.

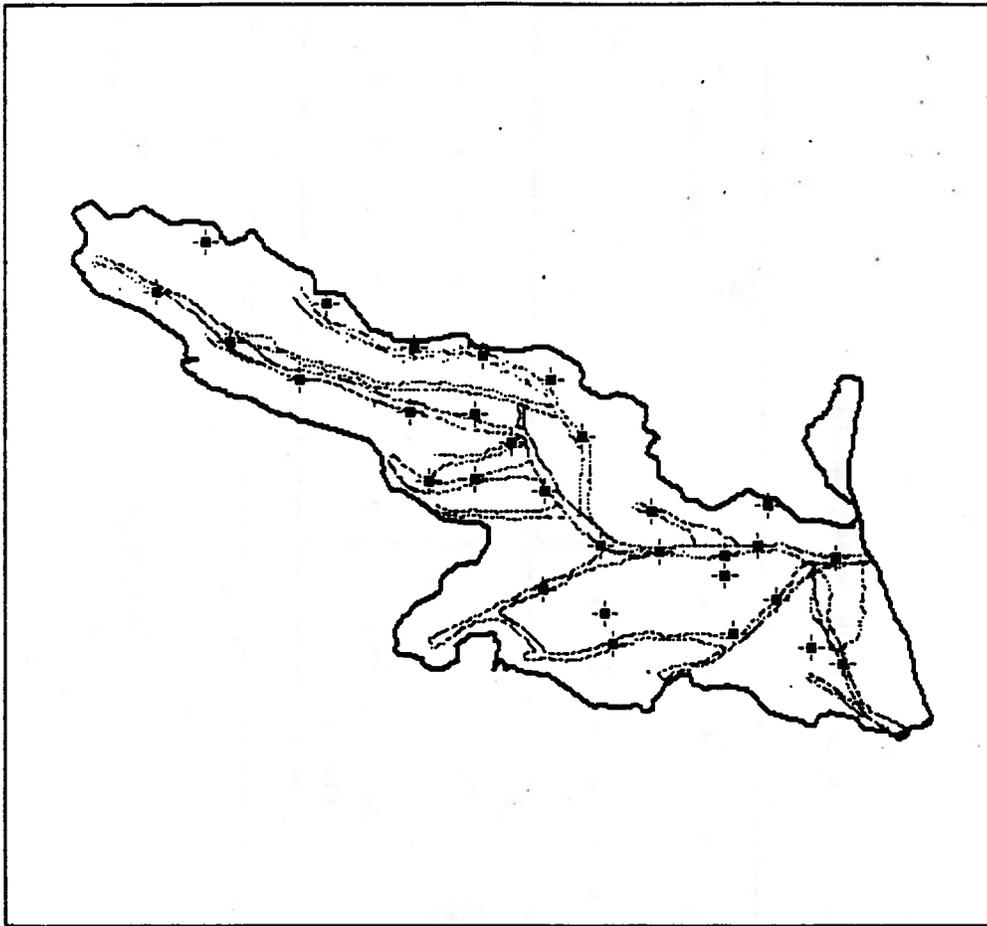
Figure 1. Boone Sale Permanent 3-m x 20-m plot layout*.



Releve plot

*not to scale

Fig. 2. Boone Sale harvest boundary with skid trail boundaries and plot centers as surveyed with the Trimble GPS



Scale 1:4800

N



Overstory density and browsing effects on stump sprouting of three northern hardwoods (red maple, northern red oak, and paper birch) in north-central Minnesota.

A PLAN B PAPER
SUBMITTED TO THE FACULTY OF THE GRADUATE SCHOOL
OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA
BY

Bruce B. Moreira

IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS
FOR THE DEGREE OF
MASTER OF SCIENCE

July 2001

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank Eileen Carey, Dennis Cook, Alaina Berger, Alan Ek, Klaus Puettmann, and John Zasada for their helpful comments and insight during my thesis. Their patience and encouragement helped me make it through the challenges posed. I also thank my family and friends, most of all, Lisa Kneller, for reminding me of the real reasons behind all the work.

Table of Contents

List of Tables	iii
List of Figures	iv
Chapter 1. Stump Sprouting and Forest Regeneration: Sprout Specific Factors and Management of Stump Sprouts for Forest Regeneration.	1
Stump Sprouting Dynamics and Forest Regeneration.....	2
Factors Affecting Stump Sprouting.....	4
Harvest Independent Factors	5
Harvest Dependent Factors.....	7
Management of Stump Sprouting for Timber	13
Control of Unwanted Sprouting	16
Conclusions	18
Literature Cited.....	20
Chapter 2. Overstory Density and Browsing Effects on Stump Sprouting in Northern Hardwood Forests.	25
Abstract.....	26
Introduction	27
Materials and Methods	30
Study Species.....	30
Site Description	31
Field Measurements.....	33
Data Analysis.....	34
Standardization Methods	34
Non-linear regression	35

Table of Contents. Chapter 2: Data analysis (cont.)

Overstory Composition.....	36
Results	38
Overstory Density	38
Browsing	40
Stump Diameter	40
Stems	41
Comparisons Between Factors	41
Differences Between Growth and Size Measures	42
Shade Tolerance Effects.....	43
Site Differences	43
Discussion.....	44
General Sprout Responses.....	44
Species Differences	47
Site Differences	50
Management Implications.....	51
Literature Cited.....	53

Tables

Chapter 2:

Table 1. Site characteristics and sample sizes	58
Table 2. Mean values for each site	59
Table 3: Multiple regression equations for each site, species and size measure	60
Table 4. Percent reduction in relative height of the tallest sprout from open canopy to closed canopy predicted by regression models	61
Table 5. Percent reduction in relative diameter of the tallest sprout from open canopy to closed canopy predicted by regression models	61

Appendix:

Table 1. Soil Texture by Site	67
Table 2. Proportion of trees in each shade tolerance class	67
Table 3: Multiple regression equations for each minor site, species and size measure	68

Figures

Chapter 2:

Figure 1. Approximate locations of field sites in Minnesota	62
Figure 2. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout of red maple and northern red oak as a function of overstory basal area.....	63
Figure 3. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout of paper birch as a function of overstory basal area.....	64
Figure 4. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout as a function of apical browsing events	65
Figure 5. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout as a function of stump diameter	66

Chapter.1:

**Stump sprouting and forest regeneration:
Sprout specific factors and management of stump sprouts for forest regeneration**

Stump Sprouting Dynamics and Forest Regeneration

Forest regeneration is a critical component of forest management and conservation. Forest regeneration patterns establish the species composition of a forest. Forest health and species diversity are also determined by regeneration dynamics. Whether a stand is being managed for conservation, harvests, or for multiple uses, understanding and developing the ability to influence forest regeneration is a critical component of forest management.

Forest regeneration is governed by a host of factors at different levels. On a landscape scale, climate, soils, geology, and disturbance have large effects on forest regeneration (Tubbs 1977, Kruger and Reich 1997). Light, moisture levels, nutrient availability, browsing, harvest methods and other factors play significant roles in determining regeneration on a local scale (Pacala et al. 1994). Many of these local scale factors are influenced by overstory density (Groot and Carlson 1996, Messier and Bellefleur 1988, Lieffers et al. 1999, Counte 2000). For example, as overstory density increases, the quality and intensity of light on the forest floor decreases (Messier and Bellefleur 1988, Lieffers et al. 1999). Light quality and intensity is also influenced by the species composition and structure of the overstory canopy (Canham et al. 1994a).

Most deciduous tree species in northern hardwood forests sprout readily from cut stumps and stump sprouts show faster initial growth than seedlings (Johnson and Rogers 1984, Tubbs 1977). Seedling germination and growth have been extensively studied in northern hardwood forest species, but stump sprouting dynamics are not well understood in these species (Crow 1988). Stump sprouts have the advantage of large root systems and carbohydrate reserves from parent trees to accelerate their growth (Johnson 1994).

The role of stump sprouting in unmanaged forests has received little attention. The ability of stumps to sprout after natural disturbances and the frequency of mature trees of sprout origin (i.e. multiple boles) in unmanaged systems indicates that stump sprouting is a significant contributor to tree recruitment in unmanaged forests. In a post-disturbance environment, the faster growth and greater root reserves of stump sprouts gives them an advantage over seedlings and early advanced regeneration to fill canopy gaps (Kruger and Reich 1993). For example, sprout origin red maple were the first trees to reach dominant canopy conditions in unmanaged big-tooth aspen stands and to begin to create a presence in the overstory (Palik and Pregitzer 1992).

In the last century a reduction in the frequency of fire has significantly changed the composition of forests throughout the region (Kruger and Reich 1997). Some species, like sugar maple (*Acer saccharum* L.) and red maple (*Acer rubrum* L.), have increased while others, such as northern red oak, have decreased (Crow 1988, Palik and Pregitzer 1992, Abrams 1998). Red maple has been increasing in dominance across its native range not only because of the absence of fire, but because of red maple's ability to rapidly invade disturbed areas and maintain itself in established stands (Abrams 1998). Northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.) has decreased in abundance not only because of decreased fire frequency and competition with fire-intolerant species (Crow 1988) but because of limited success with regeneration efforts, gypsy moth outbreaks, oak decline, and heavy browsing (Johnson 1994). The fact that both species are able to sprout from stumps indicates that a better understanding of sprouting dynamics might improve management efforts for red maple and northern red oak.

Through sprout growth is determined by many of the same factors as seedling growth (i.e. browsing, temperature, available resources), the way sprouts may respond to these factors

and the possible interactions between these factors may differ between sprouts to seedlings. For example, browsing affects seedlings and sprouts. Browsing typically reduces the overall growth of seedlings (Canham et al. 1994b, Saunders and Puettmann 1999b). Deer browsing also slows seedling growth and can tip the balance to competition towards shrubs and unwanted vegetation (Saunders and Puettmann 1999a). Stump sprouts, however, have multiple stems that compete for resources and if browsing were to reduce the total number of competing sprouts on a stump, it would increase the growth of the dominant sprouts (Johnson and Rogers 1984, Lamson 1988, Lowell et al 1989).

Stump sprouting dynamics add a number of factors to regeneration considerations that are not applicable to regeneration from seed. Some of these factors are determined before the harvest or disturbance, such as stump diameter or available carbohydrate reserves. Others, like stump height, are determined by the method of harvest or the nature of the disturbance.

This literature review will examine the current state of knowledge in stump sprouting dynamics and consider implications of those dynamics for forest regeneration.

Factors Affecting Stump Sprouting

The factors affecting stump sprouting can be divided into harvest independent factors and harvest dependent factors. Harvest independent factors are pre-existing conditions which do not depend on the harvest method or intensity. These include stand species composition, stand age, and site quality. Harvest dependent factors are the result of some aspect of the harvest or disturbance, for example, stump height or residual overstory. These factors are directly manipulated during a harvest or the disturbance.

Harvest Independent Factors

Two harvest independent factors which effect regeneration from stump sprouts are the species and tree age/stump diameter. The species can have large effects on the magnitude of sprouting. Most obviously, no conifers in northern hardwood forest sprout. Though most hardwoods sprout, each species has different sprouting probabilities and growth rates. However, the physiological and genetic processes that control stump sprouting are not well understood (Kauppi et al. 1991). In many species, like red and sugar maple, young stumps can have sprouting probabilities of 90% in clear-cut conditions (Mroz et al. 1985). Others species, like yellow birch (*Betula alleghaniensis* Britton), are considered "non-sprouting" in the eastern U.S. (Solomon and Blum 1967). Prolific sprouting species often have more basal buds, less basal bud clustering and/or thinner bark (Mroz et al. 1985, Kauppi et al. 1988).

Species also respond differently to damage and rotting. Most species experience increased mortality after damage to growing sprouts, but the response can vary (Kays and Canham 1991). All species sprout less readily when they reach large diameters, but the "optimum" sprouting size varies between species (Johnson 1975, Mroz et al. 1985). Species not only vary in their ability to sprout, but also in the capacity of their sprouts to become canopy trees (Walters and Yanwey 1990, Sander 1990). Sprouts of red maple often succumb to rotting around the base while northern red oak sprouts frequently grow to be healthy canopy trees (Lees 1981, Johnson 1994).

Stump diameter and tree age are highly correlated but the relationship varies with site and competitive environment. On sites with better growing conditions and with lower density stands, tree trunks will reach larger diameters at younger ages. Most of the effects on stump sprouting are more a result of diameter rather than age, but it is difficult to separate the two. Most authors

treat diameter and age interchangeably (Babeux and Maufette 1994). For clarity, I will treat them as closely related factors with basically similar effects but identify situations which diameter or age may be more directly related to a given effect.

Stump diameter and age can have significant effects on stump sprouting. The magnitudes of the effects varies with the aspect of sprouting vigor. In fast growing short-lived species, like red alder (*Alnus rubra* Bong.), stump sprouting probability declines sharply as trees get older but sprout height and diameter growth have only moderate declines with tree age (Harrington 1984). For long-lived species, neither probability of sprouting nor growth of sprouts have linear relationships with stump diameter and age. Sprouting probability tends to remain constant for canopy trees until early maturity after which it declines (MacDonald and Powell 1984, Lynch and Bassett 1987). This decrease can be rapid or gradual depending on the species and the site (MacDonald and Powell 1982, Mroz et al. 1985, Lynch and Bassett 1987). For oak species, the decline seems to be more gradual (Lynch and Bassett 1987) than for maple species (MacDonald and Powell 1982, Mroz et al. 1985). Sprout number does not appear as sensitive to stump diameter as sprouting probability. For most trees, sprout number increases with stump diameter up to a plateau after which it decreases (Mann 1984, Mroz et al. 1985). However, in one study on sugar maple, stump diameter had no effect on number of sprouts (MacDonald and Powell 1983). In contrast to sprouting probability and sprout number, sprout height growth appears to be independent of stump diameter (MacDonald and Powell 1983, Mann 1984, Mroz et al. 1985).

The mechanism behind the relationship between diameter/age of the stump and sprouting probability and vigor has been examined in birch species (*Betula spp.*). Bud development and "bud banks", the reserve of dormant buds around the collar of a tree, are the most likely explanations as to why stump diameter and age appear to reduce sprouting probability. As trees

age, buds tend to develop in tight clusters rather than individually, which reduces the sprouting ability of all buds in the cluster (Kauppi et al. 1987). It is also often cited that older trees also tend to have bark that is too thick for buds to burst through (Mroz et al. 1985, Kauppi et al. 1991). However, the effect of bark thickness has never been tested empirically.

If bark thickness was the only cause of reduced stump sprouting in larger trees, species like northern red oak, which has a very thick bark, would be expected to be more affected than a species like red maple, which has thinner bark. However, large northern red oak can have sprouting rates as high as 60% (Lynch and Bassett 1989), similar to the sprouting rate of large red maple (Mroz et al. 1985). Without measuring bark thickness and sprouting percentages, it is difficult to conclude whether or not bark thickness effects sprouting.

The larger root systems and more trunk area for bud development would be expected to increase sprout number and/or growth in larger stumps. Mroz et al. (1985) found this to be true only for total sprout biomass. Stump diameter had no effect on height growth of the tallest sprout. Two comparable studies on sugar maple and red maple found no increase in sprout vigor in larger stumps (Mann 1984, MacDonald and Powell 1983), though they made similar or identical measurements to Mroz et al. (1985). The lack of a benefit of a larger root system could be because the growth of the sprout is not resource limited or that another factor related to stump diameter and age is working to counter-act the positive effect of added resources.

Harvest Dependent Factors

Sprouting success is also dependent on how a tree is harvested and the resulting growing conditions. Some effects are direct, for example, shorter stumps results in fewer buds which result in fewer sprouts. Some effects are indirect, for example, leaving more residual trees decreases resource levels, which then decreases growth rates of sprouts. Many effects of

harvesting have the potential for interaction with other harvest dependent and harvest independent factors.

Stump height can have a significant effect on stump sprouting. Since the dormant basal buds that develop into sprouts are located on the side of a stump, taller stumps could be expected to have more sprouts. In some cases, taller stumps have more sprouts than shorter stumps during the first few years of growth because the taller stumps have more area on the side of the stump for dormant basal buds to develop and subsequently sprout (Harrington 1984, Tappeiner et al. 1996, Jobidon 1997). In other situations, stump height appears to have no effect (Ducrey and Turrell 1992, Johansson 1987). As the stems grow, self-thinning reduces the number of remaining stems and the differences in the number of sprouts between short and tall stumps disappear (Jobidon 1997). Stump height does not appear to effect sprout vigor (Ducrey and Turrell 1992, Jobidon 1997). Therefore, although shorter stump height appears to reduce the initial number of stems on a stump in some cases, it does not affect the long-term viability of stump sprouts in most situations. In areas with heavy browsing or pest attacks, taller stumps may increase the long term survival by increasing the number of viable stems at a young age and thus increasing the probability that one or more of the stems would survive browsing or insect attacks to become mature trees.

The location of the buds (i.e. above vs. below ground) influences sprouting levels. In pubescent birch (*Betula pubescens* Ehrh.) in field sites, 90% of the dormant buds were below ground, but only 10% burst, while above ground 40% of the buds burst (Kauppi et al. 1988). In a longer-term growth study with silver birch (*Betula pendula* Roth) saplings, Kauppi et al. (1991) found that a higher proportion of above-ground buds contributed to the sprouting of saplings despite more buds being underground. Lowering the ground level around coppiced saplings was

found to be the most effective way to increase sprouting, partially because of increased light, but also because of other environmental factors associated with ground level.

Canopy conditions have a range of effects on understory conditions (Leak and Solomon 1975, Tubbs 1977, Lieffers et al. 1999, Counte 2000). Increasing residual overstory has been shown to decrease stump sprouting in shade tolerant and shade intolerant species (Church 1960, Tappeiner et al. 1996, Gardiner and Helming 1997, Comeau et al. 1998). Stumps of understory big leaf maple (*Acer macrophyllum* Pursh.) cut under a closed canopy had a low rate of sprouting. Once the canopy trees were harvested, the rate of sprouting in big leaf maple increased dramatically, even in stumps that began sprouting two years before the harvest (Tappeiner et al. 1996). In red maple, canopy release of 7-year-old stumps significantly increased DBH growth of sprouts, but did not significantly increase height growth (Trimble 1974). Red maple and gray birch (*Betula populifolia* Marsh.) sprouts showed increases in basal area growth with increased light (Kays and Canham 1991). A comparison of stump sprouting in water oak (*Quercus nigra* L.) under two densities of residual overstory found that stumps have higher survival and growth after greater overstory removal (Gardiner and Helming 1997). Paper birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh.) had a similar response to reduced overstory densities (Comeau et al. 1998). The sprout growth of paper birch was equal, under heavy versus light thinning treatments, but under a clearcut treatment, sprouts had higher survival and were taller after two years.

Two studies, one on water oak (Gardiner and Helmig 1997) and one on paper birch (Comeau et al. 1998), were similar enough to allow comparison in the response of two species to overstory density. Gardiner and Helmig's (1997) findings agree with Comeau et al.'s (1998) findings, though Comeau's found a stronger effect of overstory density on sprout growth (40%

vs. 25%). The difference may be a result of Comeau et al.'s treatments having larger difference in density (600 stems/ha vs. 210 stems/ha in Gardiner and Helmig). Comeau et al.'s (1998) findings suggest that if water oak had been measured under clearcut conditions, it would have resulted in an even higher rate of sprouting. A wider range of overstory densities may have also overcome the variability that resulted in the seventh year loss of significance in Gardiner and Helmig's (1997) study.

Greenhouse studies have looked directly at the effects of light and temperature, two factors affected by overstory density. Increased light and increased temperature result in increased sprouting, supporting the field studies on canopy density. In greenhouse conditions, increased temperature had a large positive effect on the height of stump sprouts under all light levels in silver birch seedlings (Johansson 1986). The effect of light levels on sprouting depended on temperature. All stumps were tall in high temperature (24° C) and short in low temperatures (12° C) regardless of light levels. In medium temperatures (18° C), increasing light levels from 25 $\mu\text{E}/\text{m}^2\text{s}$ to 400 $\mu\text{E}/\text{m}^2\text{s}$ increased sprout growth over 300% (Johansson 1986). Under controlled garden experiments using European birch (*Betula pubescens* Ehrh.), shading significantly decreased sprout biomass and height growth (Johansson 1987). Sprouts grown in 10% of full sunlight had less than 25% of the biomass of sprouts grown under 50% sunlight or full sunlight.

The response of stump sprouts to increased nutrient levels is not clear. Mroz et al. (1985) believed that fertilizer augments sprout growth but found that the variation in sprout response to fertilizer was too high to document this. On sites with higher site indices, sprouting percentage was actually lower (Mroz et al. 1985). This may have been because the larger trees on the high quality sites had thicker bark, reducing their sprouting ability. Sprout height,

however, was positively correlated with stump diameter and site quality, supporting the hypothesis that the probability of sprouting depends on physiological factors while the vigor of sprouts depends on environmental factors.

The time of year a tree is cut can also have a significant effect on sprout development, but studies show that the magnitude of the effect is small and the variability is very large. In balsam fir-paper birch forests in Quebec, red maple stumps cut in May had more sprouts than trees cut in June, but the effect was only marginally significant (Babeux and Mauffette 1994). In this study, cutting time had no effect on sprout height and biomass growth and after two growing seasons, any effects of cutting season were gone. As a result, Babeux and Mauffette (1994) concluded that other factors beside cutting season should be examined to manage the level of stump sprouting in red maple. This conclusion was supported by a similar study on four hardwood species by Kays and Canham (1991). The study found that cuts before and after the growing season yielded significantly more and taller stumps after two years, but the effect was non-significant after three years. The roots reserves of the stumps recovered quickly, showing that the effect of cutting time was short-lived. Johansson (1992) found similar results in two Scandinavian birch species. Winter cuts resulted in both taller and thicker sprouts than cuts during the summer months. Harrington (1984) found that winter cuts had lower mortality in red alder sprouts, but only 10 to 15%. Johansson (1992) and Harrington (1984) did not measure sprouts for sufficient time to determine if the effect was short-lived.

When root reserves as well as sprout growth are examined, a more complete picture of the effects of cutting time on tree growth emerges. Kays and Canham (1991) examined the effect of harvesting on root reserves and sprout growth in saplings of four hardwood species in New York. They found pruning early in the growing season and pruning multiple times during

the growing season significantly reduced the root reserves of stumps. The intensity of the reduction was very different between species but the overall impact was the same for all species. When tree growth was measured, the effect of cutting time on tree growth was smaller and became negligible after three growing seasons. It should also be emphasized that this study was conducted on sprouts growing from sapling stumps and the objective of cutting the sprouts was to reduce sprout regeneration. Adult trees may not be affected as much by the reduction in root reserves because they have much larger reserves.

The rate and dynamics of self-thinning of sprouts on a maturing tree can have a large effect on surviving sprouts. Each stump has multiple sprouts but each sprout cannot be considered an individual because they are connected to the same root system. As stumps age, the number of sprouts declines until only one, or in most cases a few, dominant sprouts remain to grow into an adult tree. This process of self-thinning has been seen for a diverse range of species (Haney 1962, Wendel 1975, Beck 1977, Johnson and Godman 1983, Lamson 1988). In many cases the process of self-thinning decreased the sensitivity of overall sprout growth to other factors which may have reduced sprout growth in the short term (e.g. stump height in Jobidon 1997). Most studies did not monitor the sprouts long enough to discover if self-thinning would weaken or eliminate any of the effects of other factors on sprout growth over the long term. The extent of self-thinning questions the final relevance of many of the factors discussed above, especially when considering their effect on the number of sprouts per stump. If a clump of stump sprouts is ultimately reduced to one or two sprouts, the end effect of a 50% reduction in the initial number of sprouts may be negligible. Total sprout biomass also could be of questionable importance. Other factors would not be effected by self-thinning. For example, the percentage of stumps sprouting and measurements associated with the tallest sprout are not

reduced by self-thinning. The tallest sprout after 5 years usually is the surviving sprout after 25 years (Lowell et al. 1989).

Competition between sprouts on a single stump can also affect stump sprout growth and success. Reducing the competition between sprouts by manually thinning smaller stump sprouts increases the growth of the remaining sprouts (Johnson 1975, Lamson 1988, Lowell et al. 1989). Competition between sprouts could interact with a number of other factors to compound or counteract their effect on sprout growth. The competition can be more intense in poor growing conditions than in good ones (Wilson and Tilman 1993). Sprouts growing in dense clumps (i.e. with high competition for resources) would be more negatively affected by dense overstories or low nutrients. None of the studies on stump sprouting examined competition of sprouts with respect to environmental conditions. Competition could also interact with browsing to compound the negative effect of browsing (e.g. browsing could deplete the total resources available to competing stems, reducing the overall growth of the sprout) or to counteract the negative effect of browsing (e.g. by reducing competition between the sprouts, browsing could increase growth of the tallest sprout).

Management of Stump Sprouting for Timber

Stump sprouting has been managed for pulp and fuelwood production around the world for centuries. Though, not as common, stump sprouts can also be effectively used for timber production in northern hardwoods. Research on timber production in northern hardwoods has focused on northern red oak but any sprouting species could, in theory, be managed for timber. Most studies have concentrated on thinning stump sprouts to a single dominant sprout to reduce competition between sprouts on the same stump. For northern red oak, the earlier a stump is thinned the greater the effect of thinning on the size of the tree (Johnson 1975, Johnson and

Rogers 1984). Equations have been developed from a 25-year study of northern red oak sprout growth that predict the diameter of a thinned northern red oak stump sprout in Wisconsin (Johnson 1975, Johnson and Rogers 1984). If thinned after 5 years, DBH at age 25 was 27 cm compared to 16 cm for an unthinned clump, a 69% increase. The increase was similar on good, medium, and poor sites. A similar study on red and white oak (*Quercus alba* L.) in Missouri found a 2-3 fold increase in survival but only a 25% increase in average DBH 25 years after thinning treatments were applied to oak stems (Lowell et al. 1987). A later study (Lowell et al. 1989) in a clear-cut northern red oak and white oak (*Quercus alba* L.) stand found a 55% increase in bole volume of thinned sprouts vs. unthinned sprouts. All four studies agree that the earlier a stand is thinned, the greater the increase in growth. Other sprout thinning methods, such as 2,4-D or Triclopyr application, have been found to be as effective as mechanical thinning in reducing sprouting to a dominant stem (Groninger et al. 1998).

Stump sprouting trees can retain multiple stems and still remain healthy in maturity. Only one study examining stump thinning considered the basal area of the stems that were cut and the loss in yield from their removal. In white oak, the tallest sprout in thinned sprouts grew significantly larger than the tallest sprout in unthinned sprouts, but when all sprouts (including the removed sprouts) were taken into consideration, unthinned sprouts had over twice the volume and nearly twice the volume growth of thinned sprouts after 25 years (Haney 1962). The trees in the study were growing on poor to fair soils (60 S.I.), which may have restricted the ability of stump sprouts to take advantage of thinning. Haney (1962) thinned sprout clumps at age 25, i.e., after the sprouts have already undergone the majority of the self-thinning. This may have decreased the ability of sprouts to take advantage of the reduced competition, since the most intense competition and self-thinning had already occurred. Even with these limitations, the

results call attention to the tree volume removed by thinning and indicate that it merits consideration in silvicultural applications which focus on total volume more than on volume of single trees.

Sprout thinning in species other than oaks has not been found to have clear benefits to growth. Ten years after thinning basswood (*Tilia americana* L.), black cherry (*Prunus serotina* Ehrh.), northern red oak, and red maple, thinning and pruning treatments failed to increase sprout growth (Lamson 1988). Thinning and pruning stems increased the overall survival probability but didn't significantly increase DBH or height for most species. Basswood and red maple had significant increases in growth 10 years after thinning and pruning treatments, but northern red oak and black cherry did not. However, other studies found large effects of thinning on growth in northern red oak (e.g. Johnson and Rogers 1984, Lowell et al. 1989).

Sprout thinning treatments increase the growth rate of northern red oak stump sprouts, but are also costly. Actively managing stump sprouts for increased timber volume by manually thinning sprouts has not been found to be cost effective in northern red oak (Dwyer et al. 1993). The thinning costs are not compensated for by increased timber yield, even using a conservative 3% interest rate and the maximum market price for timber. However, alternatives to mechanical thinning (e.g. stem herbicide injection, stem spraying) have a much lower application cost (65-40% decrease in Groninger et al. 1998) which could make sprout thinning more cost effective. The margin in Dwyer et al. (1993) that caused thinning not to be cost-effective was small enough that the 40% decrease in thinning costs found by Groninger et al. (1998) would be expected to make sprout thinning profitable. It should also be remembered that profitability considerations were for oak, a high value timber tree with a strong response to sprout thinning, and that the cost

effectiveness of thinning would be lower for trees with lower value or with poorer responses to sprout thinning.

Stump sprout production may not have the potential for complete stand regeneration in many cases (Johnson 1994) but stump sprouts can be used to supplement seedling and advanced regeneration (Wendel 1975). By taking advantage of the natural sprout regeneration after harvest and manipulating sprouts to maximize growth, stump sprouts can add to timber production.

Control of Unwanted Stump Sprouting

Stump sprouts can also be unwanted side effects of harvest operations. Undesired sprouting species can compete with planted seedlings, advanced regeneration or sprouts of the desired species in a stand. Controlling stump sprouting can be a difficult task largely for the same reasons stump sprouting is effective for forest regeneration (i.e. rapid growth of sprouts and high probability of sprouting). Sprout control often uses the same methods as management of stump sprouting described in previous section of this paper (e.g. cutting time and stump height). Indeed, many of the studies cited in previous discussion about cutting time and stump height aimed to reduce sprouting, not to promote it. Other sprout control tactics share methods with sprout thinning, (e.g. herbicide use), though the research efforts are different.

Controlling stump sprouting by cutting during the growing season has been found to be effective for only a limited time period if at all (Babeux and Mauffette 1994, Wendel 1975, Kays and Canham 1991, Ducrey and Turrell 1992, Johansson 1992). A two-year study in Quebec on red maple (Babeux and Mauffette 1994) concluded that cutting during the growing season was largely ineffective at sprouting control and that other means should be used. Reductions in growth and increases in mortality were found in four eastern hardwood species especially for

multiple cuts in one season (Kays and Canham 1991). The same study, however, found that root reserves returned to uncut levels within one or two years, indicating that sprout growth might recover as well. Cutting multiple times during one season increases mortality, thus reducing the number of sprouting stumps in the long term, but may not reduce the long-term growth of the surviving sprouts. The study only covered three years, limiting the possibility to observe long-term effects. The magnitude of the effect of cutting during the growing season is also extremely variable (Johansson 1992) and site and species dependent (Babeux and Mauffette 1994).

Cutting stumps shorter to reduce stump sprouting has also shown mixed results. Greenhouse studies found that taller stumps had more viable buds and more sprouting (Kauppi et al 1988, 1991). Laboratory studies found significant declines in sprout growth on short stumps (Johansson 1991, 1992), but studies on the same species in the field failed to show the same decline (Johansson 1992). Big leaf maple sprouted more from 60 cm stumps than 30 cm stumps (Tappeiner et al. 1996), but other longer term and more comprehensive studies on other maple species found no significant difference in sprout growth between stump heights (Jobidon 1997, Mroz et al. 1985). Much like cutting season, the reduction in growth achieved by cutting stumps shorter seems to disappear over time in the field (Jobidon 1997).

Chemical and biological control of sprouting has resulted in much more consistent and effective reduction in sprouting rates. Two types of chemical herbicides reduced sprouting by 50% in two oak species during the first year of treatment, but the effect only lasted one or two years (Ward and Bowersox 1979). Fenuron was more effective than 2,4,5-T, but both reduced sprouting. After 14 years, sprout number per stump of treated stumps was half to a third of untreated stumps. In surviving stumps, neither herbicide reduced height growth, however. A similar study on paper birch and pin cherry found comparable results (Jobidon 1998). Chemical

(glyphosphate, bialaphos) applications were found to be very effective in reducing number of sprouts per stump and increasing mortality of stumps, but not in reducing the height of surviving sprouts. Biorational control agents, fungal secondary metabolites, were only effective in some of the cases, signifying the unreliability of the production process. Moritz (1999) also found significant reductions in mean height and number of sprouts on stumps of northern red oak, paper birch, sugar maple and box-elder (*Acer negundo* L.). However, the study only followed sprout growth for two years.

Increased stump mortality is an effective control of sprouts even if the growth of the surviving stumps was not reduced. Given the amount of self-thinning that occurs in stump sprouts (Mroz et al. 1985, Gardiner & Helming 1997, Johansson 1987), reducing sprout number may not be as important since self thinning will reduce sprout number nonetheless. Indeed, reducing the total number of sprouts on a stem could actually increase the vigor of the remaining stems (Johnson and Rogers 1984).

Conclusions

Stump sprouting dynamics are affected by harvest independent and dependent factors. These factors have been studied in a number of different species and in a range of environments. The effects of tree species and stump diameter are independent of harvest methods. The species of a tree can have a large influence on sprouting probability and growth. Larger diameter stumps appear to have lower sprouting probabilities, but larger stumps appear to support sprout growth as effectively as small diameter stumps. While many factors which depend on harvest methods and post-harvest stand conditions may have substantial effects on sprout growth, the two most significant factors to consider when managing for forest regeneration, are overstory density and

competition between sprouts. Browsing is also a major concern but little work has been done examining the effect of browsing on sprout growth.

The majority of the factors influencing sprouting have been examined for only a few species (e.g. the increase in growth after sprout thinning in northern red oak), and few of these factors have been examined over a longer time period. Interactions between factors, such as competition between sprouts and overstory density, also lack extensive examination. As a result, stump sprouting dynamics are not well understood for the majority of the species in northern hardwood forests. Some aspects of sprouting dynamics, like canopy density, have been found to have significant and lasting effects under all conditions, while others, like stump height, have been found to have limited or temporary effects. Sprouting dynamics in unmanaged systems after natural disturbances are also poorly understood.

Successful management of stump sprouting for timber production in northern red oak shows that stump sprouts can be a significant and valuable contribution to a regenerating stand (Johnson and Rogers 1984). Intensive management may not be wise for all species and regeneration goals (Dwyer et al. 1993), but regeneration from sprouts can often be successful with less management than planting or natural regeneration from seed. With a better understanding of sprouting dynamics, forest managers will be able use natural regeneration, from seeds and from sprouts, to more effectively increase productivity and maintain healthy forests. A more complete picture of sprout dynamics will also help predict changes in unmanaged systems after disturbance and help explain landscape level changes in forest composition in species such as red maple and northern red oak

Literature Cited

- Abrams, M.D. 1998. The red maple paradox. *Bioscience*, 48: 355-364.
- Arikian, M. 2000. Soil disturbance and residual forest canopy influence tree regeneration in aspen and Northern hardwood stands of Minnesota. MS-Thesis. University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota, USA.
- Babuex, P. and Mauffette, Y. 1994. The effects of early and late spring cuts on the sprouting success of red maple (*Acer rubrum*) in northwestern Quebec. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 785-791.
- Beck, D.E. 1977. Growth and development of thinned vs. unthinned yellow poplar sprout clumps. USDA Forest Service, Southeast Experiment Station. Research Paper. SE-173.
- Brand, D.G. 1985. Competition-induced changes in developmental features of planted Douglas-fir in southwestern British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 16: 191-196.
- Canham, C.D., Finzi, A.C., Pacala, S.W. and Burbank, D.H. 1994a. Causes and consequences of resource heterogeneity in forests: interspecific variation in light transmission by canopy trees. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 337-349.
- Canham C.D., McAninch J.B. and Wood D.M. 1994b. Effects of the frequency, timing, and intensity of simulated browsing on growth and mortality of tree seedlings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 817-825.
- Church, T.W. 1960. Factors affecting the development and survival of sugar maple sprouts. *Society of American Foresters Proceedings*, Washington, D.C. 1960: 32-35.
- Comeau, P.G., Wang, J.R., Lechford, T. and Coopersmith, D. 1998. Effects of birch spacing on birch resprouting and understory light. *3rd International Conference on Forest Vegetation Management*, 141: 78-81.
- Counte, M.A. 2000. Seasonal growth and photosynthesis of white pine seedlings under various overstory cover types in northern Minnesota. MS-Thesis. University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota, USA.
- Crow, T.R. 1988. Reproductive mode and mechanisms for self-replacement of northern red oak (*Quercus rubra*). *Forest Science*, 34: 19-40.
- Davis, A., Puettmann, K. and Perala, D. 1998. Site preparation treatments and browse protection affect establishment and growth of northern white-cedar. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station. Research Paper. NC-330.
- Ducrey, M. and Turrel, M. 1992. Influence of cutting methods and dates on stump sprouting in holm oak (*Quercus ilex* L) coppice. *Annales des Sciences Forestieres*, 49: 449-464.

- Dwyer, J.P., Dey, D.C. and Kurtz, W.B. 1993. Profitability of precommercially thinning oak stump sprouts. *Northern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 10: 179-183.
- Dyer, M.I., Turner, C.L. and Seastedt, T.R. 1993. Herbivory and its consequences. *Ecological Applications*, 3: 10-16.
- Gardiner, E.S. and Helmig, L.M. 1997. Development of water oak stump sprouts under a partial overstory. *New Forests*, 14: 55-62.
- Groninger J.W., Stein H.D., Zedaker S.M., and Smith D.W. 1998. Growth response and cost comparisons for precommercial thinning methods of Appalachian oak stump sprout clumps. *Southern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 22: 19-23
- Groot A. and Carlson D.W. 1996. Influence of shelter on night temperatures, frost damage, and bud break of white spruce seedlings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 26: 1531-1538.
- Haney, G. 1962. Growth of thinned white oak sprouts. *Journal of Forestry*, 60: 644-645.
- Harrington, C.A. 1984. Factors influencing the initial sprouting of red alder. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 14: 209-213.
- Jobidon, R. 1998. Comparative efficacy of biological and chemical control of the vegetative reproduction in *Betula papyrifera* and *Prunus pensylvanica*. *Biological Control*, 11: 22-28.
- Jobidon, R. 1997. Stump height effects on sprouting of mountain maple, paper birch and pin cherry - 10 year results. *Forestry Chronicle*, 73: 590-595.
- Johansson, T. 1986. Development of suckers by two-year-old birch (*Betula pendula* Roth) at different temperatures and light intensities. *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research*, 1: 17-26.
- Johansson, T. 1991. The effect of stump height and cut surface type on stump survival, sprouting and sprout growth after cutting of 10-35-year old *Betula pubescens* Ehrh. Rapport Institutionen for Skogsproduktion, Sveriges Lantbruksuniversitet., 28.
- Johansson, T. 1987. Irradiance in thinned Norway spruce (*Picea abies*) stands and the possibilities to prevent suckers of broadleaved trees. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 20: 307-319.
- Johansson, T. 1992. Sprouting of 2- to 5-year-old birches (*Betula pubescens* Ehrh. and *Betula pendula* Roth) in relation to stump height and felling time. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 53: 263-281.
- Johnson, P. 1975. Growth and structural development of red oak sprout clumps. *Forest Science*, 21: 413-418.
- Johnson, P. and Godman, R. 1983. Precommercial thinning of oak, basswood, and red maple sprout clumps. In: J.C. Stier (Ed.), *Silviculture of established stands in North Central*

- Forests. Society of American Foresters Region V Technical Conference, Duluth, MN, pp. 124-139.
- Johnson, P.S. 1994. Silviculture of northern red oak. In: Biology and silviculture of northern red oak in the north central region: A synopsis. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station. GTR-NC-173.
- Johnson, P.S. and Rogers, R. 1984. Predicting 25th-year diameters of thinned stump sprouts of northern red oak. *Journal of Forestry*, 82: 616-619.
- Kauppi, A., Paukkonen, K. and Rinne, P. 1991. Sprouting ability of aerial and underground dormant basal buds of *Betula pendula*. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 21: 528-533.
- Kauppi A, Rinne P and Ferm A 1987. Initiation structure and sprouting of dormant basal buds in *Betula pubescens*. *Flora*, 179: 55-83.
- Kauppi, A., Rinne, P. and Ferm, A. 1988. Sprouting ability and significance for coppicing of dormant buds on *Betula pubescens*. *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research*, 3: 343-354.
- Kays, J. and Canham, C. 1991. Effects of time and frequency of cutting on hardwood root reserves and sprout growth. *Forest Science*, 37: 524-539.
- Kruger, E. L. and Reich, P.B. 1993. Coppicing alters ecophysiology of *Quercus rubra* saplings in Wisconsin forest openings. *Physiologia Plantarum*, 89: 741-750.
- Kruger, E.L. and Reich, P.B. 1997. Responses of hardwood regeneration to fire in mesic forest openings - I - Post-fire community dynamics. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 27: 1822-1831.
- Lamson, N.I. 1988. Precommercial thinning and pruning of Appalachian stump sprouts - 10-year results. *Southern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 12: 23-27.
- Leak, W.B. and Solomon, D.S. 1975. Influence of residual stand density on regeneration of northern hardwoods. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station. NC-149.
- Lees, J.C. 1981. Three generations of red maple stump sprouts. Maritimes Forest Research Centre. Information Report. M-X-119.
- Lieffers, V.J., Messier, C., Stadt, K.J., Gendron, F. and Comeau, P.G. 1999. Predicting and managing light in the understory of boreal forests. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 796-811.
- Lowell, K.E., Garrett, H.E. and Mitchell, R.J. 1989. Potential long-term growth gains from early clump thinning of coppice-regenerated oak stands. *New Forests*, 3: 11-19.
- Lowell, K.E., Mitchell, R.J., Johnson, P.S., Garrett, H.E. and Cox, G.S. 1987. Predicting growth and "success" of coppice regenerated oak stems. *Forest Science*, 33: 740-749.

- Lynch, A.M. and Bassett, J.R. 1987. Oak stump sprouting on dry sites in northern lower Michigan. *Northern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 4: 142-145.
- MacDonald, J.E. and Powell, G.R. 1983. Relationship between stump sprouting and parent tree diameter in sugar maple the first year following clearcutting. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 13: 390-394.
- Mann, L.K. 1984. First-year regeneration in upland hardwoods after two levels of residue removal. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 14: 36-342.
- Messier, C. and Bellefleur, P. 1988. Light quantity and quality on the forest floor of pioneer and climax stages in a birch-beech-sugar maple stand. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 18: 615-622.
- Moritz, D.A. 1999. A study of the control of stump sprouting hardwoods using pathogenic fungi. MS-Thesis. University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota, USA.
- Mroz, G.D., Frederick, D.J. and Jurgensen, M.F. 1985. Site and fertilizer effects on northern hardwood stump sprouting. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 15: 535-543.
- Pacala, S.W., Canham, C.D., Silander, J.A. and Kobe, R.K. 1994. Sapling growth as a function of resources in a north temperate forest. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 2172-2183.
- Palik, B.J. and Pregitzer, K.S. 1992. The age and height structure of red maple (*Acer rubrum*) populations in northern Michigan. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 22: 1449-1462.
- Sander, I. 1990. *Quercus rubra* - Northern Red Oak. In: *Silvics of North American Trees. Volume 2, Hardwoods*. USDA Forest Service Agricultural Handbook. 654.
- Saunders, M.R. and Puettmann, K.J. 1999. Effects of overstory and understory competition and simulated herbivory on growth and survival of white pine seedlings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 536-546.
- Saunders, M. R. and Puettmann, K.J. 1999b. Use of vegetational characteristics and browsing patterns to predict deer damage in eastern white pine (*Pinus strobus*) plantations. *Northern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 16: 96-102.
- Solomon, D. and Blum, B.M. 1967. *Stump Sprouting of Four Northern Hardwoods*. USDA Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. Research Paper. NE-59.
- Tappeiner, J.C., Zasada, J., Huffman, D. and Maxwell, B.D. 1996. Effects of cutting time, stump height, parent tree characteristics, and harvest variables on development of bigleaf maple sprout clumps. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry*, 11: 120-124.
- Tift, B.D. and Fajvan, M.A. 1999. Red maple dynamics in Appalachian hardwood stands in west Virginia. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 157-165.

- Trimble G.R. Jr. 1974. Response to crop-tree release by 7-year-old stems of red maple stump sprouts and northern red oak advance reproduction. USDA Forest Service Research Paper, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. NE-303, 6 pp.
- Tubbs, C.H. 1977. Natural Regeneration of northern hardwoods in the Northern Great Lakes Region. USDA Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. Research Paper. NC-150.
- Walters, R.S. and Yanwey, H.W. 1990. *Acer rubrum* - Red Maple. In: Silvics of North American Trees. Volume 2, Hardwoods. USDA Forest Service Agricultural Handbook. 654.
- Ward, W.W. and Bowersox, T.W. 1979. Oak stump sprouts in regeneration on a good site. *Journal of Forestry*, 77: 672-674.
- Wendel, G.W. 1975. Stump sprout growth and quality of several hardwood species after clear-cutting. USDA Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. Research Paper. NE-329.
- Wilson, S.D. and Tilman, D. 1993. Plant competition and resource availability in response to disturbance and fertilization. *Ecology*, 74: 599-611.

Chapter 2:

Overstory density and browsing effects on stump sprouting in northern hardwood forests

Abstract: Stump sprouting is a potentially viable, but often overlooked, means of regeneration in managed northern hardwood forests. Two of the most important factors affecting forest regeneration in these forest types are overstory density and browsing. Overstory density and browsing have been widely studied for seedlings and saplings, but less so for stump sprouts. I investigated how stump sprouting after harvest of northern red oak (*Quercus rubrum* L.), red maple (*Acer rubra* L.), and paper birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh.) is affected by canopy density and by browsing from white-tailed deer. I measured 5- to 8-year-old stumps on seven sites in Pine and Itasca counties, Minnesota, in stands with residual basal area ranging from 0-40 m²/ha. Total height, previous year's height growth and D.B.H. of the tallest sprout on each stump were measured, as well as average height of all sprouts, number of times apical dominance was broken (interpreted as browsing even on the tallest stem), and basal area of the residual overstory. All three species had similar responses to residual overstory and browsing, though significant differences between species and sites were present. Residual overstory had a strong negative effect on height and D.B.H. of the tallest sprouts. Height of tallest and average height of stump sprouts appear to be less sensitive to residual basal area than D.B.H. of the tallest sprout. Browsing intensity had a negative effect on height and D.B.H. of the tallest stump sprout. Red maple sprouts grew more than northern red oak sprouts in open and closed canopy conditions, but the difference between open and closed conditions for red maple sprouts was larger than for northern red oak sprouts. There was also a high degree of variability in the response of sprouts to overstory density between the sites. The results indicate that leaving residual overstory after harvest, especially in combination with deer browsing, will influence growth of sprouts, and thus the species composition of the future stand.

Introduction

Successful forest regeneration depends on effective silvicultural practices and an understanding of stand regeneration dynamics. Silvicultural practices in Minnesota are promoting more diverse forests and have become more dependent on natural regeneration (Puettmann and Ek 1999). The majority of the dominant species in northern hardwood forests can regenerate from stump sprouts and seeds, which means that natural regeneration in harvested areas may not only come from seedlings. Vegetative reproduction is common in unmanaged forests (Palik and Pregitzer 1992) though the extent and dynamics of sprouting in unmanaged forests is not well established. Vegetative reproduction is widely used for management of aspen (*Populus tremuloides* Michx.) in North America and for fuel and pulpwood production around the world. Regeneration of northern hardwoods, however, relies mainly on seeds and advance regeneration. As a result, stump sprouting in northern hardwood forests is not well understood. To better manage hardwood regeneration, a better understanding of the dynamics of stump sprouting in relation to harvest practices and other factors is required.

As forest management in northern hardwood forests leaves more residual trees in the landscape (Puettmann and Ek 1999), understanding the effect of the residual canopy on forest regeneration becomes increasingly important. Increased canopy cover can effect a number of understory conditions, such as decreased light levels and quality (Messier and Bellefluer 1988, Lieffers et al. 1999), increased soil moisture tension (Counte 2000), decreased frost incidence (Groot and Carlson 1996), reduced air temperature fluctuations (Counte 2000), reduced soil temperatures (Caldwell et al. 1995), and increased relative humidity (Brand 1986). The density and crown condition of canopy trees directly effects the amount of light reaching the understory (Lieffers et al. 1999). Canopy species composition also effects understory light conditions.

Shade tolerant hardwoods tend to have deeper crowns than light demanding species which reduce light levels in the understory beneath them to lower levels (Canham et al. 1994a).

Drought stress under open canopy conditions is a result of higher peak demands on moisture levels, whereas in closed canopy conditions drought stress is more often because of increased competition (Childs and Flint 1987, Mitchell and Arnott 1995, Canham et al. 1996).

A great deal of research has been conducted on the response of seedlings and saplings to overstory density and condition (e.g., Pacala et al. 1994, Messier et al. 1999), but little work has been done on sprouting. Some aspects of sprout growth are expected to be similar to seedlings and saplings. For example, studies conducted on stump sprouts and overstory density have found a decrease in sprout vigor under increased canopy density (Church 1960, Tappeiner et al. 1996, Gardiner and Helmig 1997, Comeau et al. 1998). Other factors, like competition between stump sprouts and root reserves from the parent stump may change stump sprout response to overstory density and condition.

Investigations into the stump sprouting dynamics need to consider factors that are not relevant in regeneration from seed. Some of these factors do not depend on harvest methods or disturbance types, e.g. tree species, stump diameter, and site quality. Though the majority of northern hardwoods are capable of sprouting, the success and vigor of sprouting varies widely between species (Solomon and Blum 1967, Mroz et al. 1985). As stumps age and increase in diameter, the probability of sprouting decreases because of bark thickness and bud clustering (Kauppi et al. 1987, Kauppi et al. 1988). Actual sprout vigor, however, can remain high, even in large diameter trees (Lynch and Bassett 1987, Mroz et al. 1985) indicating that once a bud successfully emerges, sprouts can thrive on larger diameter trees. A factor related to stump diameter is site quality. Site quality can effect the relationship between diameter and age of

stumps, which can result in higher quality sites actually having lower sprouting probability because of thicker bark (Mroz et al. 1985).

Many sprout-specific factors depend on harvest method or disturbance type, such as harvest season and residual overstory density. Stumps on sites harvested in winter tend to sprout more vigorously than stumps on sites harvested in summer because stumps have more carbohydrate reserves in their roots to support sprout growth (Kays and Canham 1991, Johansson 1992, Babuex and Mauffette 1994). However, studies on the impacts of harvest season on sprouting have all been conducted on saplings. It is widely accepted that stump sprouts grow faster than seedlings because of larger root reserves (Johnson 1994). Larger trees would be expected to have larger root reserves, but how much larger the reserves are and for how long the larger reserves effect the growing sprouts is unclear. Reducing the number of sprouts on a stump increases the overall growth of the dominant stump sprouts (Johnson and Rogers 1984, Lowell et al. 1989) but the possible interaction between browsing on smaller sprouts and increased growth of the dominant sprouts has not been examined. Two of these factors, overstory density and browsing, have been cited as central factors affecting forest regeneration in the Lake States (Buckley et al. 1998), but the two factors have not been examined in the same study for stump sprouts.

Three prominent sprouting species in northern hardwood forests in Minnesota are red maple (*Acer rubrum* L.), northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.), and paper birch (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh). The presence of red maple in northern hardwood forests has increased from a relatively minor component of the canopy to a ubiquitous tree in early and late successional forests because of the decrease in the abundance of fire across the landscape (Palik and Pregitzer 1992, Abrams 1998, Tift and Fajvan 1999). Northern red oak, on the other hand, has proven

difficult to regenerate by natural or artificial methods because of damage by gypsy moth (*Lymnantria dispar* L.), oak decline, competition from fire-intolerant species, frost damage, and deer browsing (Crow 1988, Johnson 1994, Buckley et al. 1998). Paper birch has remained a relatively stable component in northern hardwood forests over the last hundred years as a pioneer species (Perala and Alm 1990a).

The three species were chosen to represent a shade tolerant species (red maple), intermediate shade tolerant species (northern red oak) and shade intolerant species (paper birch). Red maple and northern red oak comparisons are also important given the rise of red maple and the decline of northern red oak in response to changes in the post-settlement landscape (Abrams 1998, Buckley et al 1998). To better understand the dynamics of stump sprouting in northern hardwood regeneration, my study examined the response of sprout size and growth of three northern hardwood tree species (red maple, northern red oak, and paper birch) to changes in overstory density and browsing.

Materials and Methods

Study species

The three species used for this study, red maple, northern red oak, and paper birch, are common overstory trees in hardwood forests of Minnesota.

Red maple is the most prolific stump sprouting tree and widespread species of the three species in the study (Walters and Yawney 1990, Solomon and Blum 1967). It grows from Florida to southern Canada and from the eastern seaboard to the eastern edge of the Great Plains. It is considered shade tolerant and has been called a "super-generalist" for its function as a pioneer and a climax species (Abrams and Kubiske 1990, Abrams 1998). Sprout regenerated red

maple is often a less desirable timber species than northern red oak or paper birch because bole ciumps commonly rot at the base, reducing their size and the quality of the timber (Johnson 1975).

Northern red oak also sprouts readily and is an important timber species (Lowell et al. 1989, Johnson 1994). Northern red oak grows from the central U.S. to southern Canada, farther north than any other oak. It is considered an intermediate shade tolerant species (Abrams and Kubiske 1990). Northern red oak sprouts tend to be more frequent on smaller stumps, but large diameter stumps are still capable of sprouting (Johnson 1975, Wendel 1975). Boles from stump sprouts are resistant to butt rot and may be equally valuable for timber as seedling origin trees (Walters and Yanwey 1990, Johnson 1994).

Paper birch is a short-lived species that grows quickly in mesic mixed hardwood and conifer forests (Safford et al. 1990). Minnesota represents the southern edge of its range, which extends from Alaska across Canada, through the Great Lakes region, to Maine and the Canadian Maritime provinces. Paper birch is shade intolerant and not as long-lived as red maple or northern red oak (Abrams and Kubiske 1990). Paper birch sprouts abundantly, though sprouts tend to have high rates of mortality during the first few years. Paper birch's sprouting rate decreases more rapidly with age than red maple or northern red oak, but mature trees are still able to sprout (Perala and Alm 1990a). Trees from sprouts mature faster than seedling origin trees, through sprout origin trees may deteriorate earlier (Perala and Alm 1990b).

Site description

This study was conducted on seven sites in north-central Minnesota's northern hardwood forests. As the three study species did not occur together on any of the sites, the five maple/oak sites were located in Pine county and the two paper birch sites were located in Itasca county

(Figure 1). Three maple/oak sites and two paper birch sites had sufficient sprouting stumps for a full sample size at least 125 trees per species. On the two remaining maple/oak sites it was only possible to collect a much smaller sample size (Table 1). These two minor sites, MO4 and MO5, were analyzed using the same methods as the main sites but are discussed separately because the smaller sample size resulted in more variable results.

The overstory composition of the maple/oak sites was 40-60% northern red oak with a mixture of other northern hardwoods, primarily sugar maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh.) and red maple comprising the remainder of the overstory. The residual overstory on the two birch sites consisted of sugar maple, red maple, basswood (*Tilia americana* L.), paper birch, and balsam fir (*Abies balsamifera* Mill.). Sites had an average residual basal area between 8.3 m²/ha to 19.5 m²/ha but were chosen to contain high within-site variability in overstory density (0 m²/ha to 40 m²/ha, Table 1).

All sites were harvested 5-8 years before the data were collected. All sites were thinned, with the exception of one birch site (B2), which was strip clearcut in 5.5 m strips. The major species harvested on the maple/oak sites was northern red oak with a significant red maple component and small number of other merchantable northern hardwoods (e.g. sugar maple, basswood, etc.). The dominant harvest species on the paper birch sites was paper birch, but a range of other northern hardwoods and a small number of conifers were also harvested.

All sites were gently sloping with small low-lying wet areas that were excluded from the survey. Soil samples (15 cm X 15 cm X 15 cm) were collected at five random points along random transects in each site. The five samples were pooled and soil texture was determined using an adapted hydrometer method (Grigal 1973). Soil analyses showed that all the sites were Sandy Loams (see Table 1). The soils in all the sites was comprised of approximately 70% sand,

25% silt, and 5% clay, except for one maple/oak site and one birch site (see Appendix: Table 6). Soils on these two sites (MO2 and B1) had about 50% sand, 45% silt, and 5% clay. The site indices for all sites were between 20 and 25 m (for northern red oak or aspen, DNR & County Foresters, pers. comm.).

Field measurements

All measurements were taken in September and October of 2000. Areas with sprouting stump densities of at least one stump per 10 m² and with variable overstory densities were identified. A twenty meter wide transect was run in a straight line through these areas until the transect entered an area with insufficient stump density or reached the edge of the harvest area. To avoid spatial autocorrelation, sprouting stumps less than five meters from already measured stumps were not used. Each sprouting stump encountered on the transect was measured for the following: 1) yearly height growth of tallest sprout for past two years (F1 & F2, cm), 2) height of tallest sprout (HT, cm), 3) diameter at breast height (130 cm) of tallest sprout (D.B.H., mm), 4) average height of all live sprouts (AH, cm), 5) stump diameter (SD, cm), 6) total number of living stems, browsed and unbrowsed (STEMS), 7) number of times the apical bud on the tallest sprout was browsed (APICAL), and 9) basal area of overstory trees around the stump (BA, m²/ha). Any stump with all sprouts browsed below the one and a half meter mark (i.e. completely browsed) was not used.

HT and AH were measured with a height pole. AH was measured by taking a reading off the height pole when the tip of the pole was estimated to be at the average height of the live sprouts (browsed and unbrowsed). DBH was measured with an analog caliper at breast height. SD was the average of the two largest perpendicular measurements of stump diameter. STEMS was the count of all living sprouts (browsed and unbrowsed) on the stump. APICAL was the

number of times the dominance in the tallest sprout changed from the apical leader to a lateral leader; it was considered an estimate of the number of times that sprout had been browsed. BA was measured with a 2-factor prism from the center of the sample stump. All live trees were tallied by species, while snags were noted separately.

F1 and F2 were the distance between the overwintering bud scars on the tallest sprout on a given stump. Determining bud scars was straightforward for birch and maple since they only have one flush per year. Determining the yearly growth in northern red oak was more complicated since it may flush multiple times, leaving more than one bud scar per year. However, overwintering bud scars on oak sprouts had an associated color change in the stem, making determination of yearly growth unambiguous. After examining a large sample of birch stump sprouts in the field, it was found that bud scars from the previous year could not be clearly determined, so previous year's growth (F2) was not reported for birch. Flush measures were not taken for any sprout if the yearly growth had been visibly damaged.

Data Analysis

Standardization methods

To compensate for unequal site conditions (Table 2, Appendix: Table 1) and a different age of the sprouts, all dependent variables were standardized. Each dependent variable was divided by the average value of all the unbrowsed sprouts in the lowest 5 m²/ha overstory of basal area (i.e. sprouts in the most favorable growing conditions for the site). All analyses were performed on the relativized measures. Relativized variables are denoted with a "Rel" prefix.

To compare the magnitude of the effects between each dependent variable in the model, the value of each linear coefficient was standardized. To standardize the coefficients, each

coefficient was multiplied by the standard deviation of the variables they modified (D. Cook, Univ. of MN Department of Statistics, pers. com.). Overstory density coefficient values could not be compared to other dependent variables using this method since the two non-linear coefficients have no linear equivalents.

Non-linear regression

Non-linear multiple regression models were used to examine the relationship between each relative growth/size measure (RelHT, RelAH, RelDBH, RelF1, RelF2) and the independent variables (BA, APICAL, SD, and STEMS). Plots of the residuals against the predicted values were examined for violations of model distribution assumptions. Regression models were fit using the ARC statistical program (Cook and Weisberg 2000).

To accommodate a non-linear relationship between growth and overstory density, a reverse exponential model fit the relationship between growth or size and residual basal area:

$$\text{RelY} = \alpha_0 \cdot e^{(\alpha_1 \cdot \text{BA})} + \alpha_2 \cdot \text{SD} + \alpha_3 \cdot \text{Apical} + \alpha_4 \cdot \text{Stems} \quad (1)$$

Where RelY is any of the dependent variables, α_x is a coefficient corresponding to the independent variable which follows it. The model has an asymptote at zero and can have either a concave or a convex curve, depending on the sign of α_1 . Each species was fit separately and site interactions for each coefficient were added to the model to accommodate differences between the sites. Maple/oak site 5 had extremely low browsing levels so the browsing coefficient was dropped from the model for that site.

The effect of overstory density (BA) consisted of two coefficients. The α_0 coefficient is the predicted value when BA=0 (i.e. the intercept). The value of the intercept (α_0) is a function of the constant used to make the measures relative for each site and by itself is not an instructive

measure of the effect of overstory density on sprout growth and size. The α_1 coefficient controls the slope and therefore defines the change in the growth or size of the sprouts over the range of overstory densities. For the purposes of the analysis, the term “effect of overstory density” will refer to the coefficient α_1 in the results and discussion of this paper.

To test for significant effects of individual variables and interactions, each variable or site by variable interaction was dropped individually and an F-test was used to detect significant changes in the model fit from the loss of the term ($p < 0.05$). Non-linear t-tests (Delta-method, Seber and Wild 1989) were used to test differences between oak and maple fits on each site. A standard T-test was used to test for differences between fits for different growth or size measures ($p < 0.05$). No statistical tests could be performed comparing paper birch to northern red oak and red maple since they were not collected on the same sites.

To test if browsing was affecting the overall response of sprouts to the other factors in the model, a model with only unbrowsed sprouts was compared to the full model and the coefficients were compared to the coefficients of the full model using a t-test test.

Overstory composition

To test for differences in sprout growth under canopies composed of shade tolerant trees and shade intolerant trees, a modified version of the non-linear model (1) was used:

$$\text{Re}Y = \alpha_0 \cdot e^{(\alpha_{10} * \text{BA}_{\text{SI}} + \alpha_{11} * \text{BA}_{\text{IN}} + \alpha_{12} * \text{BA}_{\text{ST}})} + \alpha_2 * \text{SD} + \alpha_3 * \text{Apical} + \alpha_4 * \text{Stems} \quad (2)$$

Where BA_{SI} is the total BA of all shade intolerant trees in the BA count for each stump. BA_{IN} and BA_{ST} correspond to the intermediate shade tolerant and shade tolerant trees, respectively. The shade tolerance class for each species was based on Abrams and Kubiske 1990 and Burns and Honkala 1990. The model allowed for an individual α_1 coefficient for each class of shade

tolerance. This forced the effect of all of the shade tolerance classes to be equal when the overstory density (BA) was zero, but allowed each shade tolerance class to have independent effect on growth over the range overstory density (BA). The linear portion of the model remained unchanged. The model was fit with data from each species and each site individually because of site differences. An F-test was used to test for significant changes in the model fit from splitting BA into three measures. The differences between each BA coefficient was tested with a non-linear t-test (Delta-method, Seber and Wild 1989).

Results

The regression analyses found that all of the species on all the sites had similar patterns of responses of relative growth and size to changes in overstory basal area (BA), browsing (APICAL), total number of stems (STEMS), and stump diameter (SD). Models using the five different relative growth and size measures had large differences in their goodness of fit. The models for relative height (RelHT), relative average height (RelAH), and relative diameter (RelDBH) all had a better fit than either annual growth measure (F1 and F2; $r^2 \approx 0.5$ vs. $r^2 \approx 0.2$, Table 3). The analyses that follow, therefore, focus on the three main relative size measures; relative height, relative average height, and relative diameter. The two relative growth measures, RelF1 and RelF2, are discussed when their regressions differed substantially from the other three.

Standardizing the size and growth measures removed many, but not all, of the differences between the sites. All of the sites had the same basic relationship between the variables measured, but the effect of site could not be removed from the models for northern red oak and red maple stumps ($p < 0.001$, F-test.). The final model for northern red oak and red maple contained site interactions for both coefficients of BA (α_0 only for site 1, α_1 for all three sites), and STEMS. There was no effect of site on paper birch sprout size ($p = 0.11$, F-test); therefore, site was dropped for paper birch in the final model.

Overstory density

In general, as overstory density increased, sprout sizes decreased on the three main sites ($p < 0.05$, Figure 2 & Table 2). The only two exceptions to this effect occurred in northern red oak sprouts when using the relative average height of all sprouts as the size indicator. In both

cases, the effect of overstory density was not significantly different than zero ($p > 0.1$, Site MO2 and MO3). For red maple and paper birch, the effect of overstory density was significant for all sites and size measures.

The exponential curve in the non-linear model was not pronounced for many of the fits, especially for northern red oak, but there was a clear negative relationship between overstory density and the size measures (Figures 2 & 3). Increasing overstory density tended to reduce red maple sprout size more than it reduced northern red oak sprout size (Figure 2) though red maple sprouts were taller and had larger diameters, on average, on all sites (Table 2). This difference between red maple and northern red oak sprouts was significant on Site MO2 for all size measures ($p < 0.01$). It was also significant on Site MO1, but only for diameter of the tallest sprout ($p = 0.05$). There was no significant difference between the growth response of red maple and northern red oak sprouts on Site 3. The effect of overstory density on paper birch sprouts was intermediate between northern red oak and red maple (Figure 3).

The effect of overstory density on sprout size was different between the three main sites ($p < 0.001$), though the basic relationship was consistent across three sites (Figure 2). The percent reduction in stump sprout size from an open canopy ($0 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$) to a closed canopy ($30 \text{ m}^2/\text{ha}$) was similar for all three species on all three main sites (Tables 4 & 5). Maple/oak site 4, a minor site, did not have a significant effect of overstory density on relative height, relative average height, or relative diameter for northern red oak or red maple (Appendix: Table 3). Graphs of the data from site 4 (not shown) suggested that this was because of a limited sample size. The effect of overstory density on Maple/oak site 5, which had only red maple sprouts, was very similar to the effect of overstory density on the three major sites (Appendix: Table 3).

Though, snags were measured separately and not included in the BA count for the models, they made up only a small fraction of the BA count on all of the sites. Adding the BA of the snags into the total BA in the model did not significantly change the model fit for any species ($p>0.05$).

Browsing

Browsing of the tallest sprout had a negative impact on sprout size for all sites and species ($p<0.001$). The minor site, Maple/oak 4, had very similar effects of browsing on relative height, relative average height, and relative diameter. For all species, increased browsing on the tallest sprout resulted in decreased size. The effects of browsing varied little between northern red oak and red maple or between size measures (Figure 4). In paper birch, browsing had more of an effect on relative height of the tallest sprout and relative average height of all sprouts than on relative diameter of the tallest sprout ($p<0.02$).

Fitting the model with only unbrowsed sprouts resulted in no large differences between any of the coefficients for overstory density, stump diameter or stems ($p>0.05$, data not shown) indicating that browsing did not interact with other factors in the model (i.e. the effect of overstory density on northern red oak was not effected by browsing).

Stump Diameter

Stump diameter did not always have a significant effect on sprout size. On the main sites, as red maple stump diameter increased, sprout size increased ($p<0.001$, Fig. 5). Stump diameter had no effect on northern red oak or paper birch sprouts ($p>0.05$) in all cases but relative average height of northern red oak sprouts ($p=0.03$). The effect of stump diameter on sprout size in red maple was significantly greater than in northern red oak or paper birch

($p < 0.02$). Red maple stumps on the study sites were significantly smaller than northern red oak or paper birch stumps ($p < 0.001$). The two minor sites also had a small effect of stump diameter on sprout size, but the effect was positive for northern red oak and red maple. In some cases the effect was non-significant ($p > 0.1$).

Stems

There was no significant effect of total stems on sprout size for northern red oak or paper birch on the main sites ($p > 0.1$), except relative diameter of the tallest stem and height of the tallest stem on the MO3 site. In most cases, there was also no significant effect of stems on sprout size for red maple ($p > 0.05$). The exceptions were relative height of the tallest stem on sites MO1 and MO3 and relative diameter of the tallest stem on Site MO3. On the two minor sites, there was no significant effect of the total number of stems on sprout size for red maple ($p > 0.1$) but northern red oak sprout size (for all measures) had a significant increase with increasing sprout numbers ($p < 0.02$). However, the overall effect of number of stems on sprout size in northern red oak, though significant, was small.

Comparisons between factors

Browsing and overstory density had larger effects on relative sprout size than stump diameter and total stems. Using the standard deviation standardization for each coefficient (see methods), a comparison of the linear variables (browsing, stump diameter, total stems) found that the largest effect on sprout size was browsing. In red maple, the effect of the browsing coefficient was, on average, 1.4 times larger than the effect of coefficient for stump diameter (Appendix: Table 4). The difference between the effects of browsing and total stems was even larger (average of 11.5 times greater, Appendix: Table 4). Northern red oak and paper birch also

followed this pattern (Appendix: Table 4). Because there was a great variability in the coefficients, there was also great variability in the differences between the coefficients. In all cases, however, the adjusted browsing coefficient was larger than the corresponding adjusted total stems or stump diameter coefficient (i.e. the values in Appendix: Table 4 are all greater than 1).

Though the non-linear overstory density coefficients could not be compared directly with linear variables, graphs of the non-linear equations show that the magnitude of the effect of BA is equal to or larger than the effect of browsing across the respective ranges of overstory density (Fig. 2 & 4). The main effects, therefore, on the size and growth of sprouts were overstory density and browsing. Stump diameter and total stems had minor, but significant effects.

Differences between growth and size measures

All of the growth and size measures had similar responses in the regressions, but there were notable differences. For red maple and northern red oak, the three size measures (RelHT, RelAH, RelDBH) had similar goodness of fits ($0.49 < r^2 < 0.54$ for red maple, $0.46 < r^2 < 0.47$ for northern red oak, Table 3). The models using the size measures had higher goodness of fits than the models using the growth measures (F1, F2). Paper birch models had much poorer goodness of fit values than northern red oak or red maple models (e.g., 0.51 vs. 0.15 for RelDBH in red maple vs. paper birch, Table 3).

Since all of the growth and size measures were standardized and had similar standard deviations, comparisons between the values can be made. In red maple, the largest difference between the fits of the size measures was that the α_1 term (i.e. the effect of overstory density, Equation 1) was significantly larger for relative diameter than for relative height or relative average height ($p < 0.04$). Northern red oak followed this pattern but the differences were only

significant in some cases (RelAH; MO2: $p=0.04$, MO3: $p=0.003$, RelHT; site 3, $p=0.02$). Paper birch also followed this pattern (RelHT; $p=0.05$, RelAH; $p=0.09$). This indicates that for all three species, but most prominently in red maple, relative diameter is more sensitive to overstory density than relative height or relative average height.

Red maple stump sprout relative diameter increased more as a result of higher stump diameter than relative height or relative average height ($p < 0.006$), but northern red oak and paper birch did not ($p > 0.2$, Figure 5). For paper birch, browsing had a smaller effect on relative diameter than on relative height or relative average height ($p=0.02$). Northern red oak and red maple did not follow this pattern.

Shade Tolerance Effects

There was no significant difference between the effect of each shade tolerance class on growth or size ($p > 0.05$) for any site or species (data not shown). It is important to note, however, that none of the sites had even distributions of shade tolerance classes in the canopy. The three maple/oak sites had similar overstory composition as did the two paper birch sites, but there were large differences between the two groups (Appendix: Table 2). The maple/oak sites were dominated by northern red oak, i.e., the canopy was largely made up of intermediate shade tolerant trees. Shade tolerant trees dominated the canopy of the birch site 1 whereas the canopy of birch site two was dominated by shade intolerant trees, mostly paper birch.

Site Differences

Though all values were standardized to attempt to compensate for site differences, there were still significant differences between the sites. Significant site interactions were found only in red maple and northern red oak, and in those two species, only with overstory density and total

stems. Most of the individual overstory density and site interactions were non-significant, but their overall effect on the model was significant ($p > 0.05$). In one case only, sites MO2 vs. MO1, red maple sprouts showed a significantly smaller effect of overstory density on the relative average height of all sprouts (Site 3 smaller, $p=0.03$). Red maple sprouts on site 3 had a smaller response overstory density on than sites 1 and 2 for relative height and relative diameter, though the difference was non-significant ($p>0.07$). Northern red oak sprouts tended to have a smaller response overstory density on site 2, but the difference was not significant for relative height, relative average height, or relative diameter ($p>0.05$).

These differences were associated with site characteristics, but the trends were different for red maple and northern red oak. Sprouts on site 3, the significantly different site for red maple, were one year younger the sprouts on other two sites (Table 1). Soils on site 2, the site that was different for northern red oak, had higher silt content and one more year of growth (Table 1 and 6). The overstory species composition did not appear to be associated with the differences in time since harvest and in soils between the sites. The largest differences in canopy species composition were between the two birch sites, which were the two sites with no site interaction.

Discussion

General sprout responses

In general, sprouts of all three species on all sites responded similarly to overstory density, browsing, and stump diameter. I will first discuss the overall patterns found for all species across the sites and follow this discussion with an examination of the differences that were found between the species and between the sites.

Increasing overstory density significantly reduced sprout size (relative height, relative diameter, and relative average height) in red maple, northern red oak, and paper birch in all but two models on the main sites. The two minor sites (sites 4 & 5) showed the same effect of overstory density on sprout size though in many cases the effect was not significantly different than zero because of the smaller sample size (Table 1). Other studies found a similar effect of overstory on stump sprouting. The other studies which measured stump sprouting under differing overstory densities (Comeau et al. 1998, Gardiner and Helmig 1997) found that increasing overstory density resulted in larger reductions in sprout height per m²/ha of overstory than my study (e.g. 49% reduction in paper birch in Comeau et al. 1998 compared to 29% in my study). Studies on seedling response to overstory have also found similar responses (Finzi and Canham 2000, Pacala et al. 1994). The larger reductions found in other studies may have been because differences in site quality or in species sensitivity to conditions altered by the overstory. Sprout diameter growth of all three species tended to be more effected by overstory density than height growth. This pattern has also been found in water oak stump sprouts (Gardiner and Helmig 1997).

This study may have been able to create a clearer picture of the effect of overstory if a direct measure of light (e.g. % transmission) or canopy openness (e.g. overstory cover, gap light index, etc.) had been taken along with the basal area measurement. Basal area and light levels are correlated but the exact light levels under a given basal area depend on species composition (Canham et al. 1994) and crown condition. Though the number of snags and the species composition of the canopy did not appear to affect the model significantly, combining this overstory information with basal area to interpret understory growth conditions added variability to the data.

Browsing reduced the relative height and relative diameter of the tallest sprout. This is not surprising considering that the browsing measure was determined by the number of times the dominance in the tallest sprout changed from the apical leader to a lateral leader. This finding indicates that compensatory growth in stump sprouts is not sufficient to overcome the losses from browsing. The browsing measure used, however, was not an entirely accurate one. Estimating past browsing from the present condition of the sprout, the measure used by my study, may have overlooked browsing events and may have included other, non-browsing events which had similar effects on the tallest sprout (i.e. loss of apical dominance). A direct measure of browsing (e.g. herbivore exclusion) or artificial browsing would have solved many of these difficulties.

Stump diameter did not have a significant effect on stump sprout size or growth for northern red oak and paper birch. Other studies found that the effect of stump diameter varies with the species and relative diameter ranges measured (Mroz et al. 1985, Harrington 1984, Lynch and Bassett 1987). The relationship between red maple sprouts and stump diameter in my study was very similar to the relationship found by Mroz et al. (1985) for red maple. However, the diameter range of my study did not include the larger diameters in which Mroz et al. (1985) found a plateau where increased stump diameter no longer resulted in increased sprout growth.

While my study shows that stump diameter does not have a large effect on the size of stump sprouts, it should not be construed that stump diameter, and by association, stand age is not a large determinant of the regeneration from stump sprouting in a stand after harvest or disturbance. Stumps that failed to sprout after harvest were not measured and the transect locations were chosen to contain a high density of sprouting stumps, which biased the results. Older stands may have had very low sprouting probability and minimal regeneration from stump

sprouts. I found healthy sprouts on stumps over 40 cm for red maple and 60 cm for paper birch and northern red oak. I did not find that larger stumps had smaller sprouts, which indicates that even if larger stumps have lower sprouting probability, they can still produce equally vigorous sprouts. Moreover, for red maple, it appears that larger stumps, when they do sprout, produce marginally more vigorous sprouts.

Species Differences

Red maple, though classified as shade tolerant, grows rapidly in all conditions (Abrams 1998), and thus appears to be an exception to Reich et al's (1998) generalization that shade intolerant seedlings grow better than shade tolerant species in low and high light. Northern red oak seedlings, due to a high proportion of resource allocation to roots, tends to grow slowly under all light conditions despite being classified as moderately shade tolerant (Walters and Reich 1996).

My study supports many of the previous findings on seedlings (e.g. Walters and Reich 1996, Reich et al. 1998), though red maple appears to have characteristics of a shade intolerant tree in terms of growth under open canopy conditions. Overstory canopy density had a significantly larger effect on red maple sprout growth than on northern red oak sprout growth, but the absolute size of red maple sprouts was larger under all canopy conditions on all sites. Though northern oak had higher rates of browsing on all sites (Table 2) the unbrowsed northern red oak seedlings, when considered separately, still had lower growth rates under all conditions, indicating that browsing was not the sole cause of smaller northern red oak sprouts.

The two paper birch sites differed in site quality and browse levels, making it difficult to compare the absolute size measures with red maple and northern red oak. It is also impossible to distinguish site differences from species differences in paper birch since it was collected on a

different site. It is still noteworthy, however, that effect of overstory on birch sprout growth was closer to red maple than to northern red oak (Tables 4 & 5). Reich et al. (1998) used paper birch as a shade intolerant species and found that paper birch germinants grew better than shade tolerant species under high and low light conditions.

There are many possible explanations for why red maple, despite being more shade tolerant, grew better under all overstory densities. The different regeneration strategies between northern red oak and red maple may effect their growth rates under an open versus a closed canopy. Northern red oak seedlings have high levels of root storage (Walters and Reich 1996) and sacrifice above-ground growth to decrease the risk of mortality (Canham et al 1996). If northern red oak stump sprouts maintain the same strategy as seedlings, red maple stump sprouts would be expected to have higher stem growth rates because they would be putting more resources into above ground growth.

Growing conditions on the sites may have been more optimal for red maple than for northern red oak. Northern red oak appears to grow on sandier sites than red maple (Crow et al. 1988, Abrams 1998), but red maple can prosper on very wide range of sites, including sandy soils (Walters and Yawney 1990, Abrams 1998). The largest difference between northern red oak and red maple sprouts was on MO site 2, which was the site with the soil with the smallest sand content. Red maple seedlings are more negatively effected by soil resource limitation than northern red oak (Canham et al. 1996). The sandier sites, where there was less of a difference between northern red oak and red maple, may have afforded red maple less of an advantage over northern red oak.

Another possibility is that sprout origin red maple growth patterns are different than seed origin red maple growth patterns. Red maple was not used as a shade tolerant species in any of

the studies on shade tolerance relationship to high and low light (Walters and Reich 1996, Reich et al. 1998a, Reich et al 1998b, Walters and Reich 2000) but red maple was found to have the largest percent increase in growth from low light (2%) to moderate light (45%) of four species of seedlings (white pine (*Pinus strobus* L.), northern red oak, red maple and sugar maple, Canham et al. 1996). This evidence, and the indication that northern red oak and paper birch followed the same patterns as seedlings, indicates that the hypothesis that red maple sprouts behave differently than seedlings is unlikely.

Other studies that examined the effect of overstory density on sprout growth only looked at single species, making it difficult to compare results in relation to shade tolerance. Of the four species covered in the previous studies, two are shade intolerant (paper birch, Comeau et al. 1998, and water oak, Gardiner and Helmig 1997) and two are shade tolerant (sugar maple, Church 1960, and bigleaf maple, Tappeiner et al. 1996). Both shade tolerant and shade intolerant species showed a significant increase in sprout growth with decreased overstory density. The experimental design and site conditions of the four studies were too dissimilar to make any quantitative comparisons.

While my study cannot rule out any of the hypotheses as to why red maple fit the pattern of a shade intolerant species, it demonstrates that shade tolerance rankings may not be the most effective means to predict regeneration under varying canopy density (Messier et al. 1999). Not only does canopy density affect much more than light availability (Counte 2000), the ability of a species to respond to decreased canopy density may vary according to site conditions (Canham et al. 1996). This is further complicated in stump sprout regeneration because sprouts inherit a root system and carbon stores which may potentially alter stump sprout regeneration dynamics compared to seedlings of the same species.

Site differences

Though each species had a similar response on all the sites measured, there were significant differences between the sites. The differences between the sites for overstory density did not have a clear association with number of growing seasons, soil texture, or overstory species composition. The differences were also not shared between northern red oak and red maple. The red maple site that tended to have the smallest effect of overstory density was the site with the youngest sprouts. The northern red oak site that tended to have the smallest effect of overstory density was site with the oldest sprouts. However, sprouts on all three sites had a year of difference between each of them and there is little reason to suspect that one-year age difference of the sprouts would set that site significantly apart.

There are many factors which were not measured that could have changed the effect of overstory density on the response of the sprouts on each site. The overstory crown architecture, for example, could have had a large effect on understory light conditions (Lieffers et al. 1999) and microenvironment. The number of competing sprouts on each site may have also changed the growing conditions for the tallest sprouts on each stump (Lowell et al. 1989). Site conditions, beyond just soil texture, may have also created differences in the sites. Soil compaction, frost pockets, and stand age could all have changed the growing environment for the sprouting stumps.

The differences between the site interactions with overstory density between red maple and northern red oak indicate that factors that affect red maple may have less of an effect on northern red oak and vice versa. For example, red maple is more sensitive to soil resource depletion than northern red oak (Canham et al. 1996).

Management implications

As forest management of hardwood stands depends more on natural regeneration, stump sprouting will become a larger part of regeneration in northern hardwood forests. The direction of silvicultural development in Minnesota is towards more diverse stands with more residual trees after harvest (Puettmann and Ek 1999). Browsing is also a large factor in determining forest regeneration in Minnesota. In this environment, it is important to develop a better understanding of how stump sprouts regenerate in diverse stands with a residual overstory and heavy browsing.

Though northern red oak appears less sensitive to overstory density, red maple is more vigorous under all canopy conditions. This indicates that where management goals favor northern red oak, other means are required to promote northern red oak sprouts over red maple sprouts. Fire could be an effective tool since it promotes northern red oak seedlings over more shade tolerant competitors (Kruger and Reich 1997) and would be expected to have the same effect on stump sprouts. Additionally, red maple's rise in the landscape has been associated with reduced fire frequencies (Abrams 1998).

My study also demonstrates that sprouting varies across the landscape. To predict sprout growth on each site, a wide range of site conditions must be considered. Canopy conditions and species composition of the overstory can change the understory environment (Canham et al. 1994a, Lieffers et al. 1999) which in turn can effect sprout growth and probability (Johansson 1987, Comeau 1998). Browsing can reduce growth by damaging growing stems or perhaps increase the growth of stump sprouts by accelerating thinning of stump sprouts (Lowell et al. 1989). Site conditions can have an effect on sprout regeneration (Mroz et al. 1985) and can effect species differently (Canham et al. 1996). Harvesting during the growing season can also

negatively effect sprouting probability and growth, especially in younger trees (Kays and Canham 1991).

More research needs to be done on sprouting dynamics, especially regarding overstory density and browsing, to effectively take advantage of the potential contribution of stump sprouts to forest regeneration. With a better understanding of stump sprouting dynamics, stump sprouting has the potential to become a more important part of forest regeneration in northern hardwood forests.

Literature Cited

- Abrams, M.D. 1998. The red maple paradox. *Bioscience*, 48: 355-364.
- Abrams, M.D. and Kubiske, M.E. 1990. Leaf structural characteristics of 31 hardwood and conifer tree species in central Wisconsin USA influence of light regime and shade-tolerance rank. *Forest Ecology & Management*, 31: 245-254.
- Babuex, P. and Mauffette, Y. 1994. The effects of early and late spring cuts on the sprouting success of red maple (*Acer rubrum*) in northwestern Quebec. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 785-791.
- Buckley, D.S., Sharik, T.L. and Isebrands, J.G. 1998. Regeneration of northern red oak - positive and negative effects of competitor removal. *Ecology*, 79: 65-78.
- Burgess, D. and Wetzel, S. 2000. Nutrient availability and regeneration response after partial cutting and site preparation in eastern white pine. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 138: 249-261.
- Burns, R.M. and Honkala, B.H. 1990. *Silvics of North America. Volume 2, Hardwoods.* USDA Forest Service Agricultural Handbook 654.
- Caldwell, J.M., Sucoff, E.I. and Dixon, R.K. 1995. Grass interference limits resource availability and reduces growth of juvenile red pine in the field. *New Forests*, 10: 1-15.
- Canham, C.D., Berkowitz, A.R., Kelly, V.R., Lovett, G.M., Ollinger, S.V. and Schnurr, J. 1996. Biomass allocation and multiple resource limitation in tree seedlings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 26: 1521-1530.
- Canham, C.D., Finzi, A.C., Pacala, S.W. and Burbank, D.H. 1994. Causes and consequences of resource heterogeneity in forests: interspecific variation in light transmission by canopy trees. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 337-349.
- Childs, S.W. and Flint, L.E. 1987. Effect of shadecards, shelterwoods, and clearcuts on temperature and moisture environments. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 18: 205-217.
- Church, T.W. 1960. Factors affecting the development and survival of sugar maple sprouts. *Society of American Foresters Proceedings*, Washington, D.C., 32-35.
- Comeau, P.G., Wang, J.R., Lechford, T. and Coopersmith, D. 1998. Effects of birch spacing on birch resprouting and understory light. *3rd International Conference on Forest Vegetation Management*, 141: 78-81.
- Cook, R.D. and Weisberg, S. 2000. ARC 1.03. Department of Statistics, University of Minnesota.

- Counte, M.A. 2000. Seasonal growth and photosynthesis of white pine seedlings under various overstory cover types in northern Minnesota. M.S. Thesis. University of Minnesota, St. Paul, Minnesota, USA.
- Crow, T.R. 1988. Reproductive mode and mechanisms for self-replacement of northern red oak (*Quercus rubra*). *Forest Science*, 34: 19-40.
- Finzi, A.C. and Canham, C.D. 2000. Sapling growth in response to light and nitrogen availability in a southern New England forest. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 131: 153-165.
- Gardiner, E.S. and Helmig, L.M. 1997. Development of water oak stump sprouts under a partial overstory. *New Forests*, 14: 55-62.
- Grigal, D.F. 1973. Note on the hydrometer method of particle-size analysis. *Minnesota Forest Research Notes*, 245: 1-4.
- Groninger J.W., Stein H.D., Zedaker S.M., and Smith D.W. 1998. Growth response and cost comparisons for precommercial thinning methods of Appalachian oak stump sprout clumps. *Southern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 22: 19-23.
- Groot A. and Carlson D.W. 1996. Influence of shelter on night temperatures, frost damage, and bud break of white spruce seedlings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 26: 1531-1538.
- Harrington, C.A. 1984. Factors influencing the initial sprouting of red alder. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 14: 209-213.
- Jenkins, M.W. and Chambers, J.L. 1989. Understory light levels in mature hardwood stands after partial overstory removal. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 26: 247-256.
- Jobidon, R. 1997. Stump height effects on sprouting of mountain maple, paper birch and pin cherry - 10 year results. *Forestry Chronicle*, 73: 590-595.
- Johansson, T. 1987. Irradiance in thinned Norway spruce (*Picea abies*) stands and the possibilities to prevent suckers of broadleaved trees. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 20: 307-319.
- Johansson, T. 1992. Sprouting of 2- to 5-year-old birches (*Betula pubescens* Ehrh. and *Betula pendula* Roth) in relation to stump height and felling time. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 53: 263-281.
- Johnson, P. 1975. Growth and Structural Development of Red Oak Sprout Clumps. *Forest Science*, 21: 413-418.
- Johnson, P.S. 1994. Silviculture of northern red oak. In: *Biology and silviculture of northern red oak in the north central region: A synopsis*. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station. GTR-NC-173.

- Johnson, P.S. and Rogers, R. 1984. Predicting 25th-year diameters of thinned stump sprouts of northern red oak. *Journal of Forestry*, 82: 616-619.
- Kauppi A., Rinne P. and Ferm A. 1987. Initiation structure and sprouting of dormant basal buds in *Betula pubescens*. *Flora*, 179: 55-83.
- Kauppi, A., Rinne, P. and Ferm, A. 1988. Sprouting ability and significance for coppicing of dormant buds on *Betula pubescens*. *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research*, 3: 343-354.
- Kays, J. and Canham, C. 1991. Effects of time and frequency of cutting on hardwood root reserves and sprout growth. *Forest Science*, 37: 524-539.
- Kruger, E.L. and Reich, P.B. 1997. Responses of hardwood regeneration to fire in mesic forest openings - I - Post-fire community dynamics. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 27: 1822-1831.
- Lees, J.C. 1981. Three generations of red maple stump sprouts. Maritimes Forest Research Centre. Information Report. M-X-119.
- Lieffers, V.J., Messier, C., Stadt, K.J., Gendron, F. and Comeau, P.G. 1999. Predicting and managing light in the understory of boreal forests. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 796-811.
- Lowell, K.E., Garrett, H.E. and Mitchell, R.J. 1989. Potential long-term growth gains from early clump thinning of coppice-regenerated oak stands. *New Forests*, 3: 11-19.
- Lynch, A.M. and Bassett, J.R. 1987. Oak stump sprouting on dry sites in northern lower Michigan. *Northern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 4: 142-145.
- Messier, C. and Bellefleur, P. 1988. Light quantity and quality on the forest floor of pioneer and climax stages in a birch-beech-sugar maple stand. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 18: 615-622.
- Messier C, Doucet R, Ruel JC, Claveau Y, Kelly C and Lechowicz MJ 1999. Functional ecology of advance regeneration in relation to light in boreal forests. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 812-823.
- Mitchell, A.K. and Arnott, J.T. 1995. Effects of shade on the morphology and physiology of amabilis fir and western hemlock seedlings. *New Forests*, 10: 79-98.
- Mroz, G.D., Frederick, D.J. and Jurgensen, M.F. 1985. Site and Fertilizer Effects on northern hardwood stump sprouting. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 15: 535-543.
- Pacala, S.W., Canham, C.D., Silander, J.A. and Kobe, R.K. 1994. Sapling growth as a function of resources in a north temperate forest. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 24: 2172-2183.

- Palik, B. J., Mitchell, R.J., Houseal, G., and Pederson, N. 1997. Effects of canopy structure on resource availability and seedling responses in a longleaf pine ecosystem. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 27: 1458-1464.
- Palik, B.J. and Pregitzer, K.S. 1992. The age and height structure of red maple (*Acer rubrum*) populations in northern Michigan. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 22: 1449-1462.
- Perala, D.A. and Alm, A.A. 1990a. Regeneration silviculture of birch: a review. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 32: 39-77.
- Perala, D.A. and Alm, A.A. 1990b. Reproductive ecology of birch: a review. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 32: 1-38.
- Puettmann, K.J. and Ek, A.R. 1999. Status and trends of silvicultural practices in Minnesota. *Northern Journal of Applied Forestry*, 16: 203-210.
- Reich P.B., Tjoelker M.G., Walters M.B., Vanderklein D.W. and Bushena C. 1998. Close association of RGR, leaf and root morphology, seed mass and shade tolerance in seedlings of nine boreal tree species grown in high and low light. *Functional Ecology*, 12: 327-338.
- Safford, L.O., Bjorkbom, J.C. and Zasada, J.C. 1990. *Betula papyrifera* - Paper Birch. In: *Silvics of North American Trees. Volume 2, Hardwoods. USDA Forest Service Agricultural Handbook 654.*
- Sander, I. 1990. *Quercus rubra* - Northern Red Oak. In: *Silvics of North American Trees. Volume 2, Hardwoods. USDA Forest Service Agricultural Handbook 654.*
- Saunders, M.R. and Puettmann, K.J. 1999. Effects of overstory and understory competition and simulated herbivory on growth and survival of white pine seedlings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 536-546.
- Seber, G.A.F. and Wild, C.J. 1989. *Nonlinear Regression. Wiley: New York.*
- Solomon, D. and Blum, B.M. 1967. *Stump Sprouting of Four Northern Hardwoods. USDA Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. Research Paper NE-59.*
- Tappeiner, J.C., Zasada, J., Huffman, D. and Maxwell, B.D. 1996. Effects of cutting time, stump height, parent tree characteristics, and harvest variables on development of bigleaf maple sprout clumps. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry*, 11: 120-124.
- Tift, B.D. and Fajvan, M.A. 1999. Red maple dynamics in Appalachian hardwood stands in west Virginia. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, 29: 157-165.
- Walters M.B. and Reich P.B. 1996. Are shade tolerance, survival, and growth linked - low light and nitrogen effects on hardwood seedlings. *Ecology*, 77:841-853.

Walters M.B. and Reich P.B. 2000. Trade-offs in low-light CO₂ exchange: a component of variation in shade tolerance among cold temperate tree seedlings. *Functional Ecology*, 14: 155-165.

Walters, R.S. and Yanwey, H.W. 1990. *Acer rubrum* - Red Maple. In: *Silvics of North American Trees. Volume 2, Hardwoods.* USDA Forest Service Agricultural Handbook 654.

Wendel, G.W. 1975. Stump sprout growth and quality of several hardwood species after clear-cutting. USDA Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. Research Paper NE-329.

Wetzel, S. and Burgess, D. 1994. Current understanding of white and red pine physiology. *Forestry Chronicle*, 70: 420-426.

Wilson, S.D. and Tilman, D. 1993. Plant competition and resource availability in response to disturbance and fertilization. *Ecology*, 74: 599-611.

Table 1. Site characteristics and sample sizes.

Site Code	Growing Seasons (yrs.)	# of Maple Stumps	# of Oak Stumps	# of Birch Stumps	Min-Max BA (m ² /ha)	Texture
MO1	7	111	108		0-40	Sandy Loam
MO2	8	158	123		0-32	S.Loam/Loam
MO3	6	115	141		0-36	S.Loam
B1	6			149	0-28	S.Loam/Loam
B2	5			117	0-26	S.Loam/L.Sand
MO4	6	13	31		12-26	S.Loam/L.Sand
MO5	5	62			2-28	S.Loam/L.Sand

Table 2. Mean values for each site. Units are cm except; Apical(count), Stems (count), DBH (mm) and BA (m²/ha).

SITE	N	SD	F1	F2	HT	AH	Apical	Stems	DBH	BA
Maple										
All Sites	459	16	54	53	370	264	0.2	10	19	16
MO1	111	17	45	52	330	243	0.3	12	18	12
MO2	158	15	63	55	388	273	0.3	11	19	20
MO3	115	13	49	49	302	192	0.3	8	14	16
MO4	13	12	55	50	271	205	0.4	7	13	18
MO5	62	20	57	61	547	426	0.0	11	34	13
Oak										
All Sites	403	28	43	43	246	181	0.9	10	13	20
MO1	108	31	39	39	214	159	1.2	10	11	21
MO2	123	26	44	45	278	215	1.0	8	14	20
MO3	141	28	41	41	247	168	0.6	9	13	19
MO4	31	35	61	56	263	204	0.8	14	14	19
Birch										
All Sites	266	31	71	N/A	435	339	0.3	13	28	11
Grasslot	149	32	92		625	495	0.0	8	41	8
IT2	117	31	42		251	190	0.5	18	12	13

Table 3: Multiple regression equations for each site, species and size measure*.

RelHT	BA	SD	Apical	Stems	R ²	N
Site 1						
Red Maple	0.811 e ^(-0.0127*BA)	0.00485	-0.154	0.00688	0.54	111
Red Oak	0.686 e ^(-0.0100*BA)	0.00109	-0.111	<i>0.00332</i>	0.47	108
Site 2						
Red Maple	0.886 e ^(-0.0180*BA)	0.00485	-0.154	<i>-0.00022</i>	0.54	158
Red Oak	0.885 e ^(-0.0068*BA)	0.00109	-0.111	<i>0.00541</i>	0.47	123
Site 3						
Red Maple	0.886 e ^(-0.0099*BA)	0.00485	-0.154	0.01139	0.54	115
Red Oak	0.885 e ^(-0.0134*BA)	0.00109	-0.111	0.01181	0.47	141
Paper Birch	0.966e ^(-0.0125*BA)	<i>0.00081</i>	-0.116	<i>0.00338</i>	0.16	266
RelAH						
RelAH	BA	SD	Apical	Stems	R ²	N
Site 1						
Red Maple	0.857 e ^(-0.0160*BA)	0.00620	-0.119	<i>0.00257</i>	0.49	111
Red Oak	0.669 e ^(-0.0093*BA)	0.00212	-0.095	<i>0.00074</i>	0.46	108
Site 2						
Red Maple	0.902 e ^(-0.0156*BA)	0.00620	-0.119	<i>-0.00303</i>	0.49	158
Red Oak	0.877 e ^(0.0007*BA)	0.00212	-0.095	<i>0.00368</i>	0.46	123
Site 3						
Red Maple	0.902 e ^(-0.0079*BA)	0.00620	-0.119	<i>0.00369</i>	0.49	115
Red Oak	0.877 e ^(-0.0036*BA)	0.00212	-0.095	<i>0.00239</i>	0.46	141
Paper Birch	1.014 e ^(-0.0150*BA)	<i>0.00045</i>	-0.135	<i>-0.00012</i>	0.21	266
RelDBH						
RelDBH	BA	SD	Apical	Stems	R ²	N
Site 1						
Red Maple	0.756 e ^(-0.0330*BA)	0.01130	-0.176	<i>0.00322</i>	0.51	108
Red Oak	0.606 e ^(-0.0180*BA)	0.00146	-0.158	<i>0.00252</i>	0.46	104
Site 2						
Red Maple	0.828 e ^(-0.0289*BA)	0.01130	-0.176	<i>-0.00110</i>	0.51	128
Red Oak	0.952 e ^(-0.0099*BA)	0.00146	-0.158	<i>0.00776</i>	0.46	122
Site 3						
Red Maple	0.828 e ^(-0.0266*BA)	0.01130	-0.176	0.0156	0.51	115
Red Oak	0.952 e ^(-0.0224*BA)	0.00146	-0.158	0.0158	0.46	137
Paper Birch	0.925 e ^(-0.0230*BA)	<i>0.00368</i>	-0.136	<i>0.00088</i>	0.14	265

*Each site and species is listed individually, though the regressions performed with all sites in one model (but with separate regression for each species). BA coefficients listed as they appear in Equation 1 (e.g. $\alpha_0 e^{\alpha_1 * BA}$). Coefficients in italics were non-significant (p<0.05).

Table 4. Percent reduction in relative height of the tallest sprout from open canopy (0 m²/ha BA) to closed canopy (30 m²/ha) predicted by regression models.

Species	Site 1	RelHT	
		Site 2	Site 3
Red Maple	28	40	23
Red Oak	27	18	29
Paper Birch*	30		

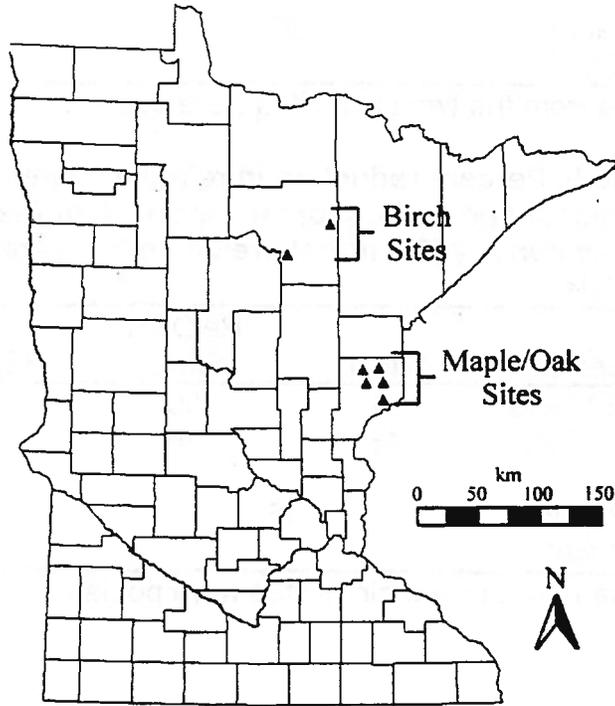
*Data from the two birch sites were pooled.

Table 5. Percent reduction in relative diameter of the tallest sprout from open canopy (0 m²/ha BA) to closed canopy (30 m²/ha) predicted by regression models.

Species	Site 1	ReIDBH	
		Site 2	Site 3
Red Maple	51	50	43
Red Oak	45	26	43
Paper Birch*	45		

*Data from the two birch sites were pooled.

Figure 1. Approximate locations of field sites in Minnesota.



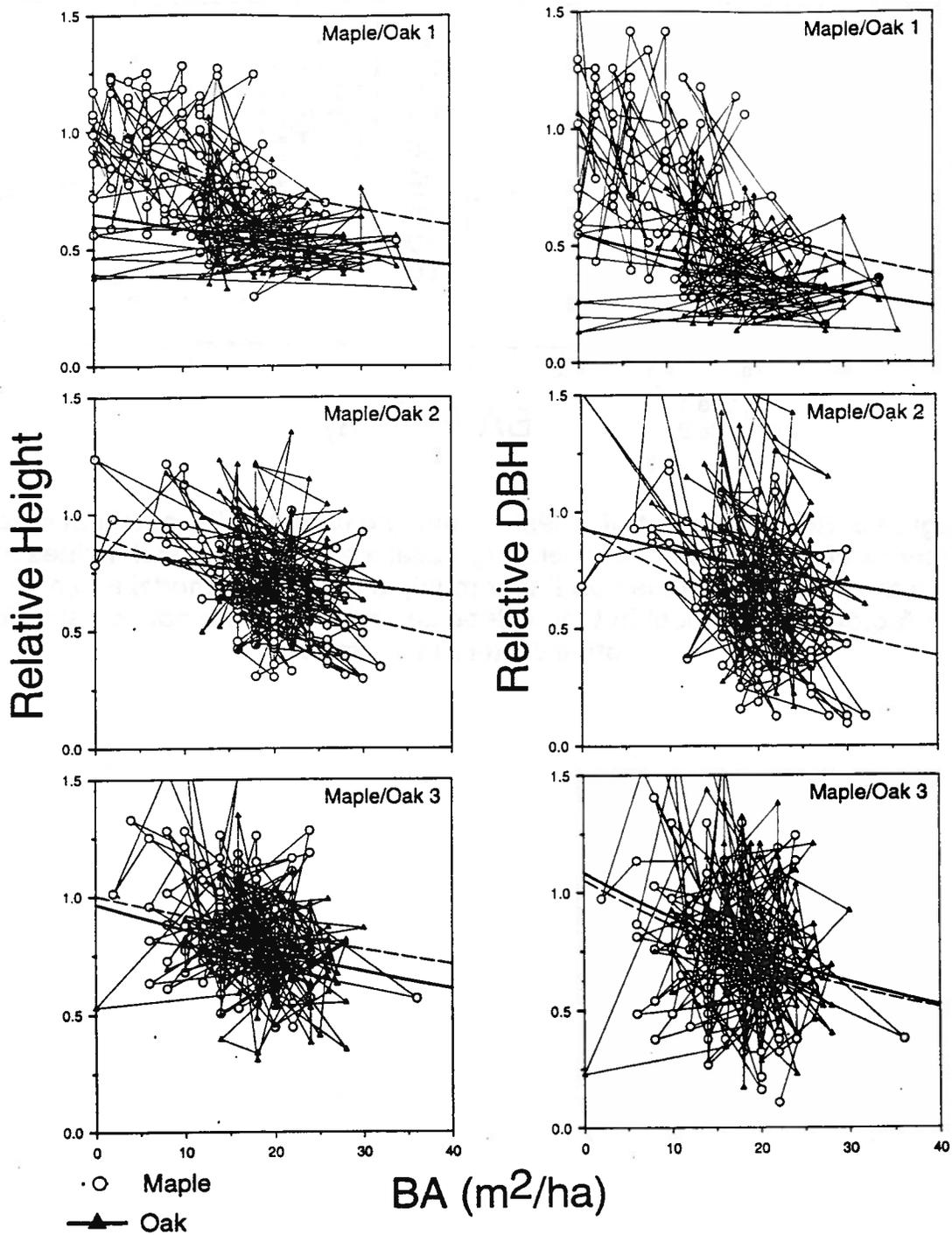


Figure 2. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout of red maple and northern red oak as a function of overstory basal area. Each species and site is plotted individually. The regression lines in each graph are derived from the non-linear multiple regression model and reflect all of the factors in the model but the values on each graph are not adjusted for the other factors in the model.

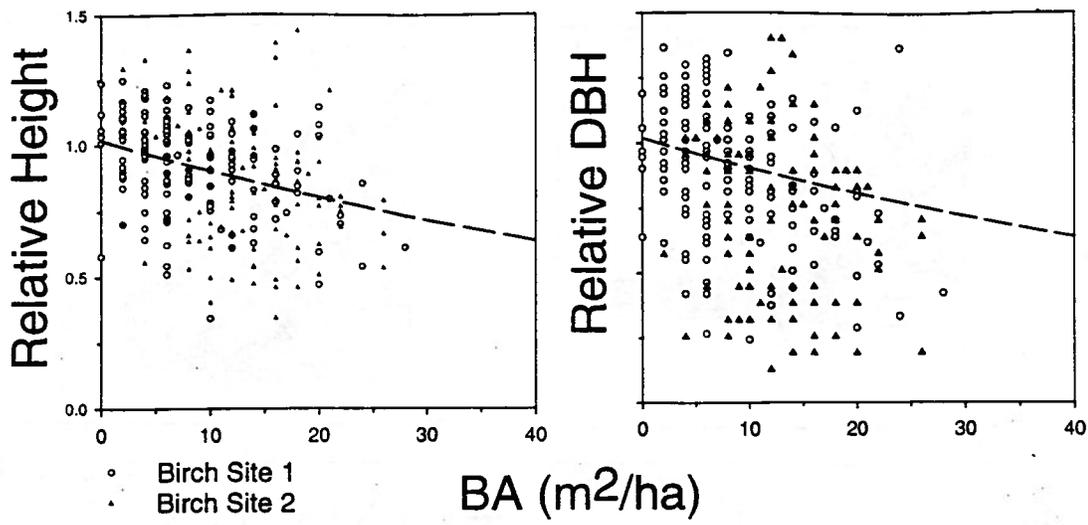


Figure 3. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout of paper birch as a function of overstory basal area. The regression lines in each graph are derived from the non-linear multiple regression model and reflect all of the factors in the model but the values on each graph are not adjusted for the other factors in the model.

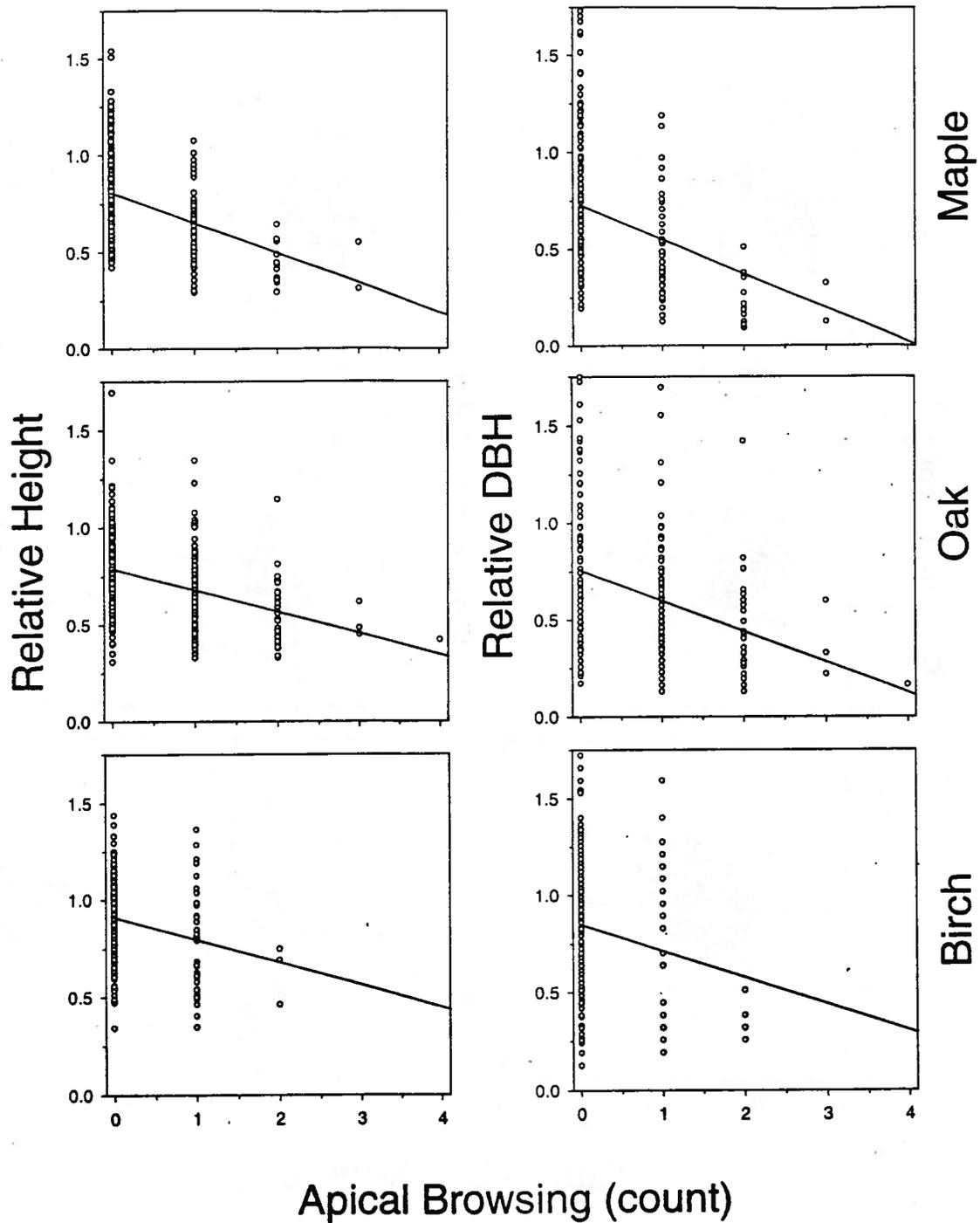


Figure 4. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout as a function of apical browsing events. The regression lines in each graph are derived from the non-linear multiple regression model and reflect all of the factors in the model but the values on each graph are not adjusted for the other factors in the model.

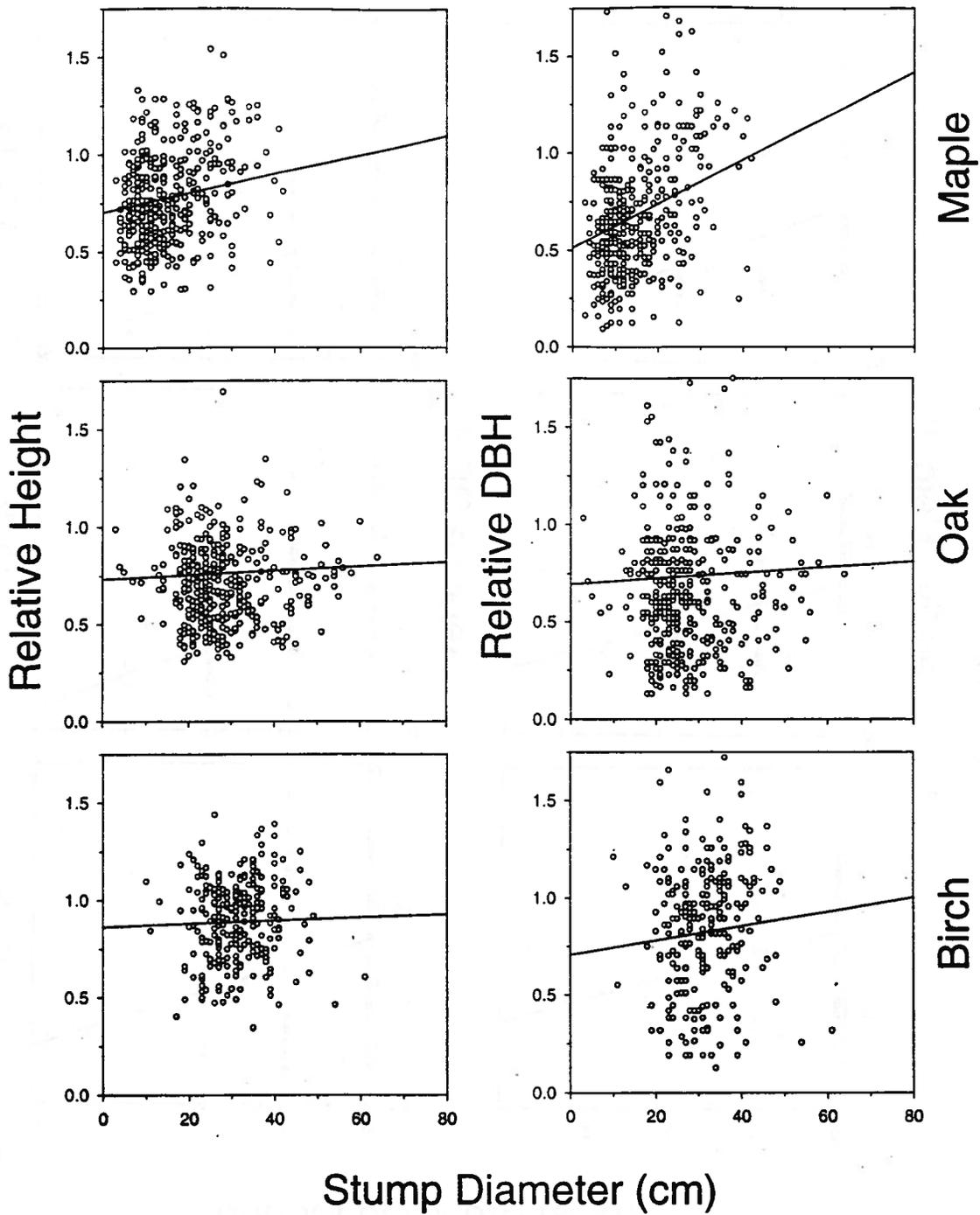


Figure 5. Relative height of tallest sprout and relative DBH of tallest sprout as a function of stump diameter. The regression lines in each graph are derived from the non-linear multiple regression model and reflect all of the factors in the model but the values on each graph are not adjusted for the other factors in the model.

Appendix.

Table 1. Soil Texture by Site.

Site	%Sand	%Clay	%Silt	Texture
B1	46	7	47	S.Loam/Loam
MO2	49	6	45	S.Loam/Loam
MO1	66	3	31	S.Loam
MO3	68	6	27	S.Loam
B2	72	10	18	S.Loam/L.Sand
MO4	76	6	19	S.Loam/L.Sand
MO5	76	7	18	S.Loam/L.Sand

Table 2. Proportion of trees in each shade tolerance class. ST=Shade Tolerant, IT=Intermediate Shade Tolerant, SI=Shade Intolerant

	ST	IT	SI
M01	22	73	4
M02	5	92	2
M03	19	80	1
M04	27	72	1
M05	7	88	5
B1	82	11	8
B2	34	0	66

Table 3: Multiple regression equations for each minor site, species and size measure*.

RelHT	BA	SD	Apical	Stems	R ²	N
Site 4						
Red Maple	0.748 e ^(0.0079*BA)	0.0090	-0.159	0.00270	0.43	13
Red Oak	0.829 e ^(-0.0052*BA)	0.00463	-0.173	0.00857	0.63	26
Site 5						
Red Maple	0.843 e ^(-0.0170*BA)	0.00547	N/A	-0.00371	0.28	62
RelAH						
Site 4						
Red Maple	0.731 e ^(0.0123*BA)	0.0175	-0.194	-0.0174	0.50	13
Red Oak	0.838 e ^(0.0018*BA)	0.0048	-0.142	0.0056	0.51	26
Site 5						
Red Maple	0.783 e ^(-0.0062*BA)	0.0077	N/A	0.00379	0.13	62
RelDBH						
Site 4						
Red Maple	0.772 e ^(-0.0155*BA)	0.0199	-0.268	-0.02941	0.59	13
Red Oak	0.754 e ^(-0.0283*BA)	0.0116	-0.237	0.01770	0.59	26
Site 5						
Red Maple	0.884 e ^(-0.0354*BA)	0.0089	N/A	-0.00098	0.28	62

*Each site and species was fit individually. BA coefficients listed as they appear in Equation 1 (e.g. $\alpha_0 e^{\alpha_1 * BA}$). Coefficients in italics were non-significant (p<0.05).



